

# Problem Books in Mathematics 

Edited by P. R. Halmos

## Problem Books in Mathematics

Series Editor: P.R. Halmos

Unsolved Problems in Intuitive Mathematics, Volume I:<br>Unsolved Problems in Number Theory<br>by Richard K. Guy<br>1981. xviii, 161 pages. 17 illus.

Theorems and Problems in Functional Analysis by A.A. Kirillov and A.D. Gvishiani (trans. Harold H. McFaden) 1982. ix, 347 pages. 6 illus.

Problems in Analysis by Bernard Gelbaum 1982. vii, 228 pages. 9 illus.

A Problem Seminar by Donald J. Newman 1982. viii, 113 pages.

Problem-Solving Through Problems
by Loren C. Larson
1983. xi, 344 pages. 104 illus.

Demography Through Problems by N. Keyfitz and J.A. Beekman 1984. viii, 141 pages. 22 illus.

Nathan Keyfitz

John A. Beekman

# Demography Through Problems 

With 22 Illustrations


Nathan Keyfitz
Center for Population Studies
9 Bow Street
Harvard University
Cambridge, MA 02138
U.S.A.

Editor
Paul R. Halmos
Department of Mathematics
Indiana University
Bloomington, IN 47405
U.S.A.

AMS Subject Classifications: 00A07, 60J70, 60J80, 62P10, 92A15

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
Keyfitz, Nathan, 1913-
Demography through problems.
(Problem books in mathematics)
Bibliography: p.
Includes index.

1. Demography-Problems, exerciscs, etc. I. Beekman, John A. II. Title. III. Scries.
HB850.3.K49 1984 304.6’076 83-6775
© 1984 by Springer-Veriag New York Inc.
All rights reserved. No part of this book may be translated or reproduced in any form without written permission from Springer-Verlag, 175 Fifth Avenue, New York, New York 10010, U.S.A.

Typeset by Composition House Ltd., Salisbury, England.
Printed and bound by R. R. Donnelley \& Sons, Harrisonburg, Virginia.
Printed in the United States of America.

## Preface

The book that follows is an experiment in the teaching of population theory and analysis. A sequence of problems where each is a self-contained puzzle, and the successful solution of each which puts the student in a position to tackle the next, is a means of securing the active participation of the learner and so the mastery of a technical subject. How far our questions are the exciting puzzles at which we aimed, and how far the sequence constitutes a rounded course in demography, must be left to the user to judge. One test of a good problem is whether a solution, that may take hours of cogitation, is immediately recognizable once it comes to mind.

While algebraic manipulation is required throughout, we have tried to emphasize problems in which there is some substantive point-a conclusion regarding population that can be put into words. Our title, Demography Through Problems, reflects our intention of leading the reader who will actively commit him- or herself through a sequence that will not only teach definitions-in itself a trivial matter-but sharpen intuition on the way that populations behave.

We experienced tension between the aim of making the problems demographically relevant, on the one hand, and expressing them in succinct and self-contained formulations, on the other. In demographic practice the complexities of data and their errors, not to mention the sheer volume of material, do not readily produce incisive formulations. A book of this kind is bound to show compromises between incisiveness and the detailed minutiae of real-life data.

Actuaries as well as demographers must utilize national, state, and regional mortality statistics, cause of death statistics, and life tables, and some of the problems are designed to provide experience with the wealth of data from the U.S. Bureau of the Census and other official sources. Students
can pick a Standard Metropolitan Statistical Area (SMSA) and compute its crude death rate, central death rates by age group and sex, and death rates for various causes. As one attempt to explain the revealed differences, students can compute adjusted death rates and age-sex-adjusted death rates for their SMSA's, where the standard population figures were for the state or possibly states surrounding the SMSA's. Each student can build a life table for his or her SMSA. The study of population dynamics must be paralleled by analysis of actual data.

The mere phrașing of problems so that they are clear is a distant goal, hardly to be attained on the first round. Repeated attempts at solution by colleagues and students, and innumerable justified complaints of obscurity, are milestones that have to be passed on the way to clarity. Testing has been possible for many but not all of the problems in this collection. Suggestions for increased precision in the asking of the questions, as well as for rigor in the answers, will be received with gratitude.

The great majority of the questions were devised by ourselves, as well as all of the answers But our debts are many. Generations of students turned up ambiguities of wording in their attempts to answer the questions. We single out for special mention Michael Stoto, Noreen Goldman, Ronald D. Lee, Juan Carlos Lerda, Robert Lundy, David P. Smith, Edmund M. Murphy, Peter Ellison, Jay Palmore, and John Hsieh; others at Chicago, Berkeley, and Harvard participated. The mathematical demography class of 1981-82 at Ball State University worked through many of the chapters. Parts of the work on the life table in Chapter II were inspired by the examinations of the Society of Actuaries. Thomas Wonnacott (University of Western Ontario) used parts of the manuscript in a class, and provided improvements to several questions. Questions that bear on forecasting developed out of a National Science Foundation grant, whose purpose was to improve forecasting techniques. Ball State University provided a sabbatical to John Beekman, in the course of which he made the major part of his contribution to this joint work. Nathan Keyfitz was greatly helped by the facilities of the Harvard Center for Population Studies and the Sociology Department of Ohio State University.

A number of the questions-though none of the answers-were first published in the revised version of the Introduction to the Mathematics of Population, and we are grateful to Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Reading, Massachusetts, for permission to use these. That book is a source of theory for the reader who wants to go further into the mathematics. A source of a different kind, that emphasizes applications, is Applied Mathematical Demography (John Wiley \& Sons, 1977), in which many of the ideas that are here expressed as problems will be found.

Finally, the typing of successive drafts of the manuscript was the work of Beatrice Keyfitz and Diane Sorlie.

## Contents

CHAPTER I
Populations That Are Not Age-Dependent ..... 1
1.1 Mathematical Concepts ..... 1
Population Models. Rates of Growth. Exponential and Logistic Models. Matrices and Graphs in Demography.
1.2. Problems ..... 5
Exercises Based on Mathematical Concepts, U.S. and World Population Figures.
1.3. Solutions ..... 12
CHAPTER II
The Life Table ..... 26
2.1. Mathematical Concepts ..... 26
Basic Functions and Their Relations. Force of Mortality. Models for Numbers of Lives. Adjusted Death Rates. Stationary Population Models.
2.2. Problems ..... 31
Central Death Rate Problems. De Moivre, Uniform, and Balducci Distributions of Deaths. Constant Force of Mortality. Elimination of a Cause of Death. Exercises on Life Table Functions. Effects of Mortality Reductions. Force of Mortality and Expectation of Life. Laws of Gompertz, Makeham, and Weibull.
2.3. Solutions ..... 40
CHAPTER III
Uses of Stable Theory ..... 55
Stable Age Distribution. Effects of Birth and Death Rates. Uses of Moments of the Age Distribution. Characteristic Equation in Unknown $r$.
3.1. Problems ..... 56
Stable Age Distribution Questions. Filling Gaps in Data. Departure of the Assumptions. Analysis of Age Distributions. Periods and Cohorts.
3.2. Solutions ..... 61
CHAPTER IV
Births and Deaths Under Stability ..... 78
4.1. Problems ..... 78
Approximate Solution to Characteristic Equation. Length of Generation. Composite of Stable Subpopulations.
4.2. Solutions ..... 81
CHAPTER V
Projection and Forecasting ..... 93
5.1. Problems ..... 93
Extrapolation of Population Totals. Matrix Technique. Analysis of the Projection Matrix. Breakdown by Sex and Other Attributes.
5.2. Solutions ..... 97
CHAPTER VI
Stochastic Population Models ..... 110
6.1. Needed Concepts ..... 110
Probabilistic Framework. Random Variables. Mean Value and Variance. Discrete and Continuous Distributions. Generating Functions. Independence. Sums of Random Variables. Central Limit Theorem.
6.2. Problems ..... 115
Family Size Exercises. Probability of Extinction. Expected Number of Direct Descendents. Distribution of Sizes of Completed Families. Parity Progression Ratio. Rural-Urban Shifts and Markov Chains. Ergodic Theorems for Markov Chains and Demography. Birth and Death Stochastic Processes. Population Estimates and Loss Functions.
6.3. Solutions ..... 124
Brief List of References ..... 135
Index ..... 137

## CHAPTER I

## Populations That Are Not Age-Dependent

Demographers, actuaries, and vital statisticians, like others who use empirical materials, require models for the interpretation of their data. Their work begins with simple assumptions, necessarily highly abstract, and then proceeds to more realistic models that cannot avoid being more complex. This book starts with problems in which age, as well as most other features of real populations, is disregarded, and in which outcomes are taken as deterministic rather than stochastic. A brief introduction presents some of the mathematical concepts of this first preliminary chapter and defines the notation in which the problems are expressed.

### 1.1. Mathematical Concepts

A population count at time $t$ will be denoted by $P_{t}$ when discrete time values are being used, or $P(t)$ over a continuum of time. A rate of increase $x$ in population can be expressed as

$$
x=\frac{P_{t+1}-P_{t}}{P_{t}} \text { or } P_{t+1}=P_{t}(1+x) \text { or as } x=\frac{1}{P(t)} \frac{d P(t)}{d t} .
$$

Either rate of change can be thought of as a rate of compound interest on a loan.

A population model reflects geometric growth if

$$
P_{t}=P_{0}(1+x)^{t},
$$

where the unit of time may be a month, a year, 5 years, etc., provided $x$ is a fraction of increase per unit of time. If one now uses 1 year as unit of time, but assumes that $x$ is compounded $j$ times per year, then at the end of 1 year

$$
P_{t+1}=P_{t}\left(1+\frac{x}{j}\right)^{j} .
$$

When the rate $x$ is compounded continuously, it will be called $r$, and since

$$
\lim _{j \rightarrow \infty}\left(1+\frac{r}{j}\right)^{j}=e^{r},
$$

we have

$$
P_{t}=P_{0} e^{r t} .
$$

The rate $r$ is sometimes taken as the crude rate of natural increase:

$$
r=\frac{B}{P}-\frac{D}{P},
$$

where $B$ and $D$ refer to births and deaths in a year, and $P$ is the population at midyear. The word "crude" reflects the disregard of age.

The projection model $P(t)=C e^{r t}$ can also be expressed through the differential equation

$$
\frac{1}{P(t)} \frac{d P(t)}{d t}=r
$$

subject to the initial condition $P(0)=C$. That model implies geometric increase, a growth pattern impossible for more than a limited period. If one allows the derivative to slow down in its growth, one is led to a logistic, i.e.,

$$
\frac{d P(t)}{d t}=r P(t)\left[1-\frac{P(t)}{a}\right] .
$$

The "slowing down" is effected by assuming an ultimate population, i.e.,

$$
\lim _{t \rightarrow \infty} P(t)=a .
$$

The solution of this differential equation is

$$
P(t)=\frac{a}{1+e^{-r\left(t-t_{0}\right)}},
$$

where $t_{0}$ is the abscissa of the midpoint of the curve.


The logistic curve as a population model was first proposed by P. F. Verhulst in 1838 in the paper: "Notice sur la loi que la population suit dans son accroissement," Correspondence Mathematique et Physique Publiée par A. Quetelet (Brussels) Vol. 10, pp. 113-121. The logistic curve can be variously described. Thus, several of the problems will use the notation

$$
P(t)=\left[A+B e^{-u t}\right]^{-1},
$$

or

$$
P(t)=\frac{1 / A}{1+(B / A) e^{-u t}} .
$$

If censuses of $p_{1}, p_{2}$, and $p_{3}$ are available at equidistant times $t_{1}, t_{2}$, and $t_{3}=\left(2 t_{2}-t_{1}\right)$, with $p_{1}<p_{2}<p_{3}$, then the population ceiling $a$ is given by

$$
a=\frac{\frac{1}{p_{1}}+\frac{1}{p_{3}}-\frac{2}{p_{2}}}{\frac{1}{p_{1} p_{3}}-\frac{1}{p_{2}^{2}}}
$$

provided the numerator and the denominator in the expression for $a$ are both positive. This is proved in Chapter V, Problem 4.

Populations can be changing with a variable increase $r(t)$. The differential equation

$$
r(t)=\frac{1}{P(t)} \frac{d P(t)}{d t}
$$

or

$$
r(t) d t=\frac{d P(t)}{P(t)}
$$

describes the growth pattern.
This yields

$$
\int_{0}^{T} r(t) d t=\left.\ln P(t)\right|_{0} ^{T},
$$

and by the definition of a logarithm

$$
P(T)=P(0) \exp \left[\int_{0}^{T} r(t) d t\right]
$$

A special case is the life-table survivorship in (1) of Chapter II.
Matrices and graphs are useful in demographic problems concerned with transitions among subpopulations. Consider two subpopulations of sizes $p_{t}$ and $q_{t}$ at time $t$.

Let growth and migration be reflected through the equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
& p_{t+1}=r_{11} p_{t}+r_{12} q_{t} \\
& q_{t+1}=r_{21} p_{t}+r_{22} q_{t} .
\end{aligned}
$$

This can be rewritten with vectors and a matrix as

$$
\binom{p_{t+1}}{q_{t+1}}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
r_{11} & r_{12} \\
r_{21} & r_{22}
\end{array}\right)\binom{p_{t}}{q_{t}}
$$

or more compactly as $P_{t+1}=R P_{t}$.
If the rates are fixed over time, the population at time $t+n$ equals that at time $t$ successively operated on by $R$ for $n$ times:

$$
P_{t+n}=R\left(\cdots R\left(R P_{t}\right) \cdots\right)=R^{n} P_{t}
$$

Let $\lambda=\lim _{t \rightarrow \infty}\left\|P_{t+1}\right\| /\left\|P_{t}\right\|$, where $\left\|P_{t}\right\|=p_{t}+q_{t}$. The quantity $\lambda$ is the ultimate ratio of population increase. It can be obtained by finding the dominant root of the equation

$$
\left|\begin{array}{cc}
r_{11}-\lambda & r_{12} \\
r_{21} & r_{22}-\lambda
\end{array}\right|=0
$$

Not only does the ratio of total populations tend to stabilize, but the ultimate ratio of subpopulations stabilizes. Thus, there is a constant $\lambda$ such that population $q$ comes to be $\lambda$ times as large as population $p$. A third aspect of stability is that the ultimate ratio of total increase, and ultimate ratio of subpopulations are not affected by the starting values for the subpopulations.

When the number of subgroups of a population is large, the matrices and conditions for stability are very difficult to handle. Luckily, there are ideas in graph theory which can be utilized to provide rules for stability. A graph consists of vertices, corresponding in our problems to subpopulations and edges representing transitions among the subgroups. Our graphs are really digraphs as the edges will always be directed, the directions being indicated by arrows. Any digraph has a corresponding matrix consisting of zeros and ones. Consider the $3 \times 3$ matrix $M$ and an initial population vector $P$ :

$$
M=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
0 & 1 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 1 \\
1 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right) \text { and } P=\left(\begin{array}{c}
p_{1} \\
p_{2} \\
p_{3}
\end{array}\right)
$$

A positive entry $m_{i j}$ (row $i$, column $j$ ) represents a transition from state $j$ to state $i$; if $i=j$, it represents a transition from state $i$ to itself. A zero entry for $m_{i j}$ reflects no transition from state $j$ to state $i$. The matrix $M$ is equivalent to the following digraph in which $p_{1}, p_{2}$, and $p_{3}$ are the nodes:


A graph or its corresponding matrix is called irreducible if every point or state of the graph can be reached from every other state. An irreducible graph is primitive if there exists a number $R$ so that any state can be reached from any other state in exactly $R$ moves; this implies that the corresponding matrix raised to the $R$ th power contains only positive elements. Primitivity is a condition for stability to occur at high powers of the matrix. A graph is primitive if and only if it contains at least two circuits whose lengths have no common divisor greater than unity. Suggestions for obtaining powers of matrices are given in Solution 17, Chapter V.

### 1.2. Problems

1. (a) Suppose a population numbering 100,000 growing geometrically at annual rate $r=0.02$. If $r$ is compounded annually-i.e., the population $P_{1}$ at the end of 1 year equals $P_{0}(1+r)$-determine the size of the population at the end of 10 years.
(b) If another population also of 100,000 is growing arithmetically with an increment of 0.02 of its initial number per year, how does its size at the end of 10 years compare with that in (a)?
(c) At the end of 100 years, what is the difference?
2. The official United States population estimate for mid-1965 was 194,303,000; for mid-1970 was 204,879,000. Extrapolate to 1975 assuming (a) fixed absolute increase, i.e., arithmetic progression, and (b) fixed ratio of incrcase, i.e., geometric progression.
3. (a) A population growing at annual rate $r$ compounded continuously reaches a population at time $t$ equal to $P_{t}=P_{0} e^{r t}$. At what rate $r^{\prime}$, compounded annually, would it have to grow so as to equal $P_{t}$ at time $t$ ? (Express in terms of $r$.)
(b) At what rate $r_{j}$, where $r_{j}$ is compounded $j$ times annually, would it have to grow to reach the above population size-i.e., what rate $r_{j}$ is equivalent to rate $r$ compounded continuously?
4. Obtain recent estimates of the U.S. population. Assume that an exponential growth model can be used for the U.S. population. In how many years will the population grow by 100 million people?
5. With the data and model from Problem 4, in how many years will the population double?
6. A population of $1,000,000$ increases at 2 percent per year for 100 years. What difference does it make if the 2 percent is compounded annually or continuously?
7. Prove that compounding $j$ times per year with rate of interest $r+r^{2} /(2 j)=r_{j}$ is nearly equivalent to a rate of interest $r$ compounded continuously.
8. Doubling time is given by $\ln 2 / \ln (1+r) \fallingdotseq 0.693 / \ln (1+r)$, if $r$ is the rate of increase compounded annually. Show
(a) that $0.70 / r$ is on the whole a better approximation than $0.693 / r$ for values of $r$ of $0.01,0.02,0.03,0.04$, and
(b) that for those $r$ values the error in $0.70 / r$ is never in excess of one percent.
9. A population of size $5,000,000$ closed to migration has fewer births than deaths. If it decreases at an annual rate of 0.0075 , how many years will it take to reach half its present size?
10. Suppose that world population numbered 2 persons $1,000,000$ years ago and $4,000,000,000$ now.
(a) How many doublings does this represent?
(b) What is the average time per doubling?
(c) What is the average rate of exponential increase?
11. Given that $6^{12}$ is about 2 billion and that $\ln 6$ is 1.79176 , work out the average rate of increase in Problem 10 with logarithms to base 6 rather than base 2.
12. A population growing exponentially stood at $1,000,000$ in 1930 and at 3,000,000 in 1970.
(a) What is its rate of increase?
(b) What is its doubling time?
(c) How long would it take to multiply by 9 ?
13. Consider a logistic population model: $P(t)=\left[A+B e^{-u t}\right]^{-1}, t \geq 0$. Verify that $P(t)$ satisfies the differential equation

$$
\frac{d P(t)}{d t}=u P(t)-u A[P(t)]^{2} .
$$

14. Find the coordinates of the point of inflection for $P(t)$.
15. Fit a logistic curve to the populations of Michigan from 1810 to 1970 as found in Census Bureau publications. Which volume or volumes did you use?
16. You have decided to project the United States population by a logistic curve

$$
P(t)=\frac{1}{A+B e^{-u u^{\prime}}}, \quad t \geq 0 .
$$

You know the populations on July 1, 1979, and July 1, 1980, are 221.1 and 223.9 millions. Determine $A, B$, and $u$ for low, medium, and high growth patterns leading to year 2076 populations of 350,450 , and 550 millions. As an approximation, you may replace $P(\infty)$ by $P(2076)$. How satisfactory are such projections?
17. Use the volume(s) from Problem 15 to do the following project. Set up a differential equation of the form $d y / d t=u y$ for a Standard Metropolitan Statistical Area (SMSA) which interests you. Let $k=$ population in 1950.

Use the data for 1960 and 1970 to determine $u$. Determine the appropriate units for $t$. Solve for $y$.

Note: The following maps could be consulted in choosing a SMSA:
(i) Standard Metropolitan Statistical Areas, United States Maps, GE-50, No. 55;
(ii) Population Distribution, Urban and Rural, in the United States: 1970, United States Maps, GE-50, No. 45;
(iii) Population Distribution, Urban and Rural, in the United States: 1970, United States Maps, GE-70, No. 1.
Many university libraries have Map Rooms, and the study of the above maps and others can be both enjoyable and enlightening.
18. This problem is based on the pamphlets "Current Population Reports of the United States Bureau of the Census." Consider a differential equation of the form $d y / d t=u y$ for Hawaii. Use the data for July 1, 1977 and July 1,1978 to determine the growth rate $u$. Here $t=1$ corresponds to 1 year from July 1, 1977. Project the population to 1990.
19. Repeat Problem 18 for a state of your choice.
20. A certain country had a population on July 1, 1980 of $15,000,000$. The births and deaths during 1980 were 750,000 and 300,000 , respectively.
(a) What is the annual crude rate of growth?
(b) Use an exponential model to project the population to 2030 (July 1).
(c) It is thought that the "ultimate" population will be $145,000,000$. Set up a logistic curve for the projections.
(d) What is the first year in which a population of $144,500,000$ occurs?
21. Consult pages 254-256 of World Population 1979, U.S. Dept. of Commerce, Bureau of the Census, 1980. These pages provide population data for Thailand. Verify the annual rates of growth for 1975 and 1978.

With the 1978 rate of growth, and an exponential model, obtain low and high population projections to July 1, 2029.
22. As an alternate model for Problem 21, use a logistic

$$
P(t)=\frac{1 / A}{1+(B / A) e^{-u t}}, \quad t \geq 0
$$

where $P(0)=46,687,000, P(\infty)=1 / A=245,000,000$, and an assumption that $u=0.023$. What value of $B / A$ results?

Determine $P(10)$ (population on July 1, 1989), $P(15), P(20), P(25), P(30)$, $P(35), P(40)$, and $P(50)$ (population on July 1, 2029).
23. Recall that for the logistic of Problem 22,

$$
\frac{1}{P(t)} \frac{d P(t)}{d t}=u-u A P(t) .
$$

Use the right-hand side of this equation to obtain the relative rates of change for $t=15,25,35$ in Problem 22.
24. Use the model in Problem 22 to determine the first year in which

$$
P(t)=\left(\frac{1}{A}-500,000\right) \text { people. }
$$

25. Consult pages 164 and 165 of the reference in Problem 21. Study notes 5 and 11, and obtain a population projection for Zimbabwe to July 1, 2000.
26. Choose a different country from the same reference. Repeat Problems 21 through 24 for it.
27. Write down the simple formula for tripling time at rate of increase $r$ percent per year compounded continuously.
28. If a population is increasing at 2 percent per year, what is the ratio of growth during the lifetime of a person who lives 70 years? At rate $r$, prove that the ratio of growth averaged over the lifetimes of several members of a population who live an expected $\dot{e}_{0}$ years, with standard deviation of length of life equal to $\sigma$, is

$$
\left[\exp \left(r \dot{\theta}_{0}\right)\right]\left(1+\frac{r^{2} \sigma^{2}}{2}\right)
$$

up to the term in $r^{2}$. If the third moment about the mean is 3000 , and $r$ is 0.02 , what is the error of this expression? (Statistical moments are defined in Chapter VI.)
29. There were 1000 births in a population in the year 1600 and 50,000 in the year 1900. If births were growing exponentially during the period with a constant rate of increase, how many people lived over the period?
30. If the annual births at time $t_{1}$ were $n_{1}$, and at time $t_{2}$ were $n_{2}$, what total number of births would occur between $t_{1}$ and $t_{2}$
(a) on the assumption of straight line or arithmetic increase, and
(b) on the assumption of exponential or geometric increase?
(c) Express the difference between the arithmetic and geometric results as a function of $t_{2}-t_{1}$.
31. (a) If a population starts at one birth per year and grows steadily at rate $r$, show that by time $t$, if $r t$ is large, the number of births is $e^{r t}$ and the number that ever lived is nearly $e^{r t} / r$. Show also that the fraction still alive is close to $r / b$, where $b$ is the annual birth rate.
(b) With an annual birth rate of 35 per thousand and a doubling in 10,000 years, what fraction is alive at any given time? With the same birth rate, if the population doubles in 100 years, what fraction is alive at any given time?
32. One thousand immigrants enter a territory at the end of each year, so that $1000 t$ enter in $t$ years. If the country was initially uninhabited, and the immigrants increase at rate $r$, what is the total living population, i.e., surviving immigrants plus native-born descendants, after $t$ years? For what value of $t$ is the total living population double the number of immigrants to date? (Leave your answer in the form of an equation.)
33. Suppose also that the death rate in the previous problem was $d$, similarly compounded momently. When would the living native-born exceed the surviving immigrants?
34. If a population is growing in such a way that the ratio of current births to persons who ever lived is always the same positive constant $f$, show that it must be growing geometrically.
35. (a) Consider a population containing two subgroups each initially of size 100,000 . If the two subgroups grow exponentially at annual rates of 0.02 and 0.04 , respectively, determine the total population after 5 years. What is the average rate of increase $r(t)$ at this time?
(b) Suppose now that the two subgroups are not distinguished-i.e., we have a population initially of size 200,000 growing at an annual rate of 0.03 . How does the size of this population at time $t$ compare with that in (a)? Calculate for $t=5$ years.
36. A population starting with $1,000,000$ people was growing exponentially at 3.5 percent per year when it first came under observation; its rate of growth immediately started to fall by the amount of 0.1 percent per year. What was the population at the end of 15 years?
37. The ratc of increase of a population at time $t$ is $r(t)=0.01+0.0001 t^{2}$. If the population totals $1,000,000$ at time zero, what is it at time 30 ?
38. A population grows as $P(t)=\left(\alpha /\left(t_{0}-t\right)\right)^{2}$. What is its rate of increase at time $t$ ? What does this say about the birthrate as $t \rightarrow t_{0}$ ?
39. A population increases at an increasing rate; in year $t$ its rate is $r(t)=0.02+10^{-6} t^{3}$. It starts at $P_{0}=1,000,000$. What is it at time $30 ?$ At time $t$ ?
40. Fit the modified hyperbola $P(t)=\left(\alpha /\left(t_{0}-t\right)\right)^{2}$ to the population of a hypothetical country:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P_{1950}=16,000,000, \\
& P_{1970}=25,000,000 .
\end{aligned}
$$

What ominous conclusion for the future of that country do you draw?
41. Given in addition that $P_{1930}=6,000,000$, fit the logistic

$$
P(t)=\frac{a}{1+\exp \left(-c\left(t-t_{0}\right)\right)}
$$

to the data in Problem 40. Express (a) the initial rate of increase, (b) the ultimate population, and (c) the time at which half the ultimate population is reached, both in terms of the parameters of $P(t)$ and numerically.
42. Consider a population $P(t)$ where $d P(t) / d t$ equals 0.01 times the size the population has already attained less $5 \times 10^{-9}$ times the square of the size it has attained. Given that the population starts at $1,000,000$, set up and solve the equation for the population at time $t$. What is the ultimate upper limit on its size? Does it depend on the starting population?
43. Use graphs and matrix algebra to determine whether the following matrices are: (a) irreducible; (b) primitive:

$$
\left[\begin{array}{llll}
1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 1
\end{array}\right] \quad\left[\begin{array}{llll}
1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right] \quad\left[\begin{array}{llll}
0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right] .
$$

44. Consider the aging process below: the population is divided into six age groups, with fertility occurring in only the fourth age group. Is the graph irreducible? What modifications would make the graph primitive?

45. Draw a graph that is irreducible but not primitive. Write out the corresponding matrix. How can your graph and matrix be modified so that they will be primitive?
46. Consider a population composed of two subgroups acted on by the $2 \times 2$ projection matrix:

$$
\mathbf{R}=\left[\begin{array}{ll}
r_{11} & r_{12} \\
r_{21} & r_{22}
\end{array}\right]
$$

Show that if all the entries in $\mathbf{R}$ are positive, then the ultimate ratio of increase $\lambda$ is larger than either $r_{11}$ or $r_{22}$.
47. Show with a graph that if either $r_{12}$ or $r_{21}$ in matrix $\mathbf{R}$ of Problem 46 equals zero, then $\mathbf{R}$ is not irreducible.
48. Each year the net rate of increase of the rural population is 2 percent, of the urban population 1 percent; at the end of each year 0.1 percent of the urban population moves to rural parts, 0.9 percent of the rural to urban.
(a) Set up the transition matrix, and show that it is both irreducible and primitive.
(b) Project through one year, starting with $1,000,000$ persons in each population.
(c) What is the ultimate ratio of increase?
(d) What is the ultimate ratio of rural to urban population?
49. In a certain population people are classified as well or (seriously) sick. Each month new entrants (all of them well) are 0.007 of the initially well people; 0.0002 of the people initially classified as well die; 0.01 of those initially well become sick; 0.005 of those initially sick recover; 0.001 of those initially sick die. Set down the equations of the process. What is the stability property of the process?
50. (a) Draw the graphṣ corresponding to

$$
\left[\begin{array}{llll}
1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right] \cdot\left[\begin{array}{llll}
1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 1
\end{array}\right] \quad\left[\begin{array}{llll}
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right]
$$

(b) Write the matrix corresponding to

51. Migration at fixed rates takes place from state $A$ to each of $B, C, D$ and $E$, from $B$ to $C, D$, and $E$, and from $C$ to $D$ and $E$. Show that stability will never be reached.
52. Add the smallest number of elements that make

$$
\left[\begin{array}{llll}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right]
$$

irreducible.
53. Square the modified matrix of Problem 52 and portray your answer as a graph.
54. What is the smallest number of additional transitions that would make

$$
\left[\begin{array}{llllll}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right] .
$$

both irreducible and primitive?
55. In a large country the number of engineers has been increasing for a long time at 4 percent per year, this being the net of entrants on the one hand and retirements and deaths on the other. Each year the new entrants are

10 percent of the number present. What fraction of the engineers who have ever existed are alive and practicing at any given moment?
56. Supposing that the United States population will ultimately be asymptotic to a ceiling of $300,000,000$, find the population $P_{2000}$ by using the logistic

$$
P_{t}=\frac{300,000,000}{1+e^{c\left(t_{0}-t\right)}}
$$

given

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P_{1940}=132,000,000, \\
& P_{1970}=203,000,000 .
\end{aligned}
$$

57. Fit

$$
P_{t}=\frac{\alpha}{t_{e}-t}
$$

to the values of $P_{1940}$ and $P_{1970}$ in the preceding problem. Compare with the logistic extrapolation. The symbol $t_{e}$ is a time such that $P\left(t_{e}\right)=+\infty$.
58. Prove that projection of $P_{1}$ at exponential rate $r_{1}$ added to projection of $P_{2}$ at exponential rate $r_{2}$ gives a higher result than projection of $P_{1}+P_{2}$ at exponential rate

$$
r=\frac{P_{1} r_{1}+P_{2} r_{2}}{P_{1}+P_{2}}
$$

### 1.3. Solutions

1. (a) $P_{10}=P_{0}(1+r)^{10}$

$$
=100,000(1.02)^{10}=121,899
$$

(b) $P_{10}=P_{0}(1+10 r)$

$$
=100,000(1.20)=120,000 .
$$

(c) At the end of 100 years, the difference has grown to 424,465 .
2. (a) $P_{n}=P_{0}(1+n r)$ where $P_{0}$ is the mid-1965 population.
$P_{5}=P_{0}(1+5 r)$,
$1+5 r=P_{5} / P_{0} \Rightarrow r=0.010886$,
$P_{10}=P_{0}(1+10 r)=215,455,000$.
(b) $P_{5}=P_{0}(1+r)^{5}$, $P_{10}=P_{5}(1+r)^{5}=216,031,000$.
3. (a) $P_{0} e^{r t}=P_{0}\left(1+r^{\prime}\right)^{t}$, $r^{\prime}=e^{r}-1$.
(b) $P_{0} e^{r t}=P_{0}\left(1+r^{\prime}\right)^{t}=P_{0}\left(1+\frac{r_{j}}{j}\right)^{j t}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& e^{r / j}=1+\frac{r_{j}}{j} \\
& r_{j}=j\left(e^{r / j}-1\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

6. $1,000,000(1.02)^{100}=7,245,000$,

$$
1,000,000 e^{2}=7,389,000
$$

7. $e^{r}=\left(1+\frac{r_{j}}{j}\right)^{j}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
r_{j} & =j\left(e^{r / j}-1\right) \\
& =j\left\{1+\frac{r}{j}+\frac{r^{2}}{2 j^{2}}+\frac{r^{3}}{6 j^{3}}+\cdots-1\right\} \\
& \fallingdotseq r+\frac{r^{2}}{2 j}+\frac{r^{3}}{6 j^{2}}+\cdots
\end{aligned}
$$

8. $P_{t}=P_{0}(1+r)^{t}=2 P_{0}$,

$$
(1+r)^{t}=2
$$

$$
t \ln _{e}(1+r)=\ln _{e} 2
$$

The true doubling time for $r$ compounded annually is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\ln 2}{\ln (1+r)} & =0.693 /\left(r-\frac{r^{2}}{2}+\frac{r^{3}}{3}-\cdots\right) \\
& \doteq \frac{0.693}{r}\left(1+\frac{r}{2}-\frac{r^{2}}{12}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

of which the term in $r^{2}$ is negligible for the rates of increase possible in human populations. The true doubling time being about $(0.693 / r)(1+(r / 2)$, we come closer with $0.70 / r$ than with $0.693 / r$ for $r \geq 0.01$, and the error of $0.70 / r$ is

$$
\frac{0.70}{r}-\frac{0.693}{r}\left(1+\frac{r}{2}\right)=\frac{0.007}{r}-\frac{0.693}{2} .
$$

Its relative error is

$$
\frac{\frac{0.007}{r}-\frac{0.693}{2}}{\frac{0.693}{r}\left(1+\frac{r}{2}\right)}=0.01-\frac{r}{2}
$$

or $(1-50 r)$ percent. Thus $0.70 / r$ has a relative error of 1 percent near $r=0$, declining to 0 at $r=0.02$, rising to 1 percent at $r=0.04$, and surpassing 1 percent above $r=0.04$.
9. $P_{t}=P_{0}(1-0.0075)^{t}$,

$$
0.5=0.9925^{t} \Rightarrow t=\frac{\ln 0.5}{\ln 0.9925}=92.08
$$

10. (a) $4,000,000,000=2 \cdot 2^{n} \Rightarrow n=30.897$ doublings.
(b) $1,000,000 / n=32,365$ ycars.
(c) $4,000,000,000=2 e^{r 1,000,000} \Rightarrow r=0.0000215$.
11. $4,000,000,000=2 e^{r 1,000,000}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
6^{12} & \fallingdotseq e^{r 1,000,000} \\
12 & =1,000,000 r \log _{6} e \\
& =1,000,000 \frac{\ln \frac{e}{\ln } \frac{1}{6}}{}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
r=\frac{12(\ln 6)}{1,000,000}=0.0000215
$$

12. (a) $3,000,000=1,000,000 e^{40 r} \Rightarrow r=0.027465$.
(b) $2=e^{0.027465 t} \Rightarrow t=25.24$ years.
(c) 80 years.
13. Using the definition or Problem 13,

$$
\begin{aligned}
P^{\prime}(t) & =u P(t)-u A P^{2}(t) \\
\frac{d^{2} P(t)}{d t^{2}} & =u P^{\prime}(t)-2 u A P(t) P^{\prime}(t)=u P^{\prime}(t)(1-2 A P(t))
\end{aligned}
$$

At $d^{2} P(t) / d t^{2}=0$ we have $P(t)=1 / 2 A$, and this is the ordinate at the point of inflection. The abscissa is the value of $t$ found from

$$
\frac{1}{2 A}=\frac{1}{A+B e^{-u}},
$$

so

$$
t=\frac{-\ln (A / B)}{u}
$$

20. (a) $u=0.03$.
(b) $P(50)=67,225,000$.
(c) $P(t)=\left\{0.0068966+0.0597701 e^{-0.03}\right\}^{-1}$.
(d) $144.5=P(t) \Rightarrow t=261$. Thus the population of $144,500,000$ people would be achieved in the year $1980+261=2241$.
21. Low: $46,687,000 e^{0.021(50)}=133,415,000$.

High: $46,687,000 e^{0.025(50)}=162,954,000$.
22.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{A+B} & =46,687,000 \Rightarrow \frac{B}{A}=4.248 . \\
P(t) & =\frac{245,000,000}{1+4.248 e^{-0.023 t}}, \quad t \geq 0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
P(10)=55,998,000 ; & P(15)=61,120,000 ; & P(20)=66,545,000 ; \\
P(25)=72,263,000 ; & P(30)=78,257,000 ; & P(35)=84,505,000 ; \\
P(40)=90,980,000 ; & P(50)=104,474,000 . &
\end{array}
$$

23. $t=15 \rightarrow 0.023(1-0.249469)=0.017$,
$t=25 \rightarrow 0.023(1-0.294953)=0.016$,
$t=35 \rightarrow 0.023(1-0.344919)=0.015$.
24. 

$$
244,500,000=\frac{245,000,000}{1+4.248 e^{-0.023 t}} \quad \text { yields } t=332 .
$$

Hence $1979+332=2311$ would be the approximate year.
25. Such a projection would begin with the July 1, 1979 population, and multiply by appropriate growth factors $1+r_{i}, i=1,2, \ldots, 21$. The factors would begin with low numbers because of war losses.
27. $3=e^{r t} \Rightarrow t=\ln 3 / r \doteq 1.1 / r$.
28. $\frac{P_{t+1}}{P_{t}}=e^{0.02}=$ ratio of growth of population during $t$ th year.

$$
\frac{P_{t+70}}{P_{t}}=e^{1.40}=4.055=\begin{aligned}
& \text { ratio of growth of population during those } \\
& 70 \text { years. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Call the length of life of the $i$ th individual $x_{i}, i=1,2, \ldots, N$; then the ratio of increase during his life-time is $e^{r x_{i}}$, and one needs the average $\sum_{i} e^{r x_{i}} / N$ or

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{N} \sum_{i} e^{r x_{i}} & =\frac{1}{N} \exp \left(r \dot{\AA}_{0}\right) \sum_{i} \exp \left(r\left(x_{i}-\dot{e}_{0}\right)\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{N} \exp \left(r \dot{e}_{0}\right) \sum_{i}\left[\left(1+r\left(x_{i}-\dot{e}_{0}\right)+\frac{r^{2}}{2}\left(x_{i}-\dot{e}_{0}\right)^{2}+\cdots\right]\right. \\
& =\exp \left(r \AA_{0}\right)\left[1+\frac{r^{2} \sigma^{2}}{2}+\frac{r^{3} \mu_{3}}{6}+\cdots\right],
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\mu_{3}$ is the third moment about the mean of length of life.
Error in the expression $=e^{0.02 \varepsilon_{0}} \frac{(0.02)^{3}(3000)}{6}=0.004 e^{0.02 \varepsilon_{0}}$.
29. $50,000=1000 e^{300 r} \Rightarrow r=0.01304$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text { Total births } & =\int_{0}^{300} B(t) d t \\
& =\int_{0}^{300} 1000 e^{0.1304 t} d t
\end{aligned}
$$

Total people who lived $=P_{0}+3,758,000$.
30. (a)


$$
\begin{aligned}
\text { Slope } & =\frac{n_{2}-n_{1}}{t_{2}-t_{1}} \\
& =\text { increase in one year } \\
& =d .
\end{aligned}
$$

Total number of births

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =\int_{t_{1}}^{t_{2}}\left\{n_{1}+\frac{n_{2}-n_{1}}{t_{2}-t_{1}}\left(t-t_{1}\right)\right\} d t \\
& =\left(\frac{n_{1}+n_{2}}{2}\right)\left(t_{2}-t_{1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

31. (a) $B_{t}=B_{0} e^{r t}=e^{r t}$.

The total number who ever lived is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{0}^{t} e^{r s} d s & =\left(e^{r t}-1\right) / r \\
& \fallingdotseq e^{r t} / r .
\end{aligned}
$$

If $b$ is the annual birth rate,

$$
b=\frac{\text { number births at time } t}{\text { number alive at time } t}=\frac{e^{r t}}{\text { number alive at time } t} .
$$

Therefore,

$$
\text { "Fraction still alive" }=\frac{e^{r t} / b}{e^{r} / / r}=\frac{r}{b} \text {. }
$$

(b) $b=0.035$,

$$
2=e^{r 10,000} \Rightarrow r=0.0000693147, \text { and } r / b=0.00198
$$

If

$$
2=e^{r 100}, \text { then } r=0.00693147, \text { and } r / b=0.198
$$

33. At the end of $t$ years surviving immigrants would be

$$
I=1000 \frac{1-e^{-d t}}{d}
$$

Native-born would be the total $L$ of the preceding problem less this: $L-I$, and the native-born would exceed the immigrants when

$$
L-I>I \text { or } L>2 I \text { or } \frac{e^{r t}-1}{r}>2 \frac{1-e^{-d t}}{d}
$$

Numerical work shows for a country peopled by immigration that the native-born quickly come to outnumber the newcomers when $r$ is large.
34. $B(t)=f \int_{0}^{t} B(u) d u$,

$$
\frac{d B(t)}{d t}=f B(t) \text {. Hence, } B(t) \text { is an exponential function. }
$$

35. (a) $100,000 e^{0.1}=110,517$,

$$
100,000 e^{0.2}=\frac{122,140}{232,657}
$$

$$
232,657=200,000 e^{5 r} \Rightarrow r=0.03025
$$

(b) $200,000 e^{5(0.03)}=232,367$.
36.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{P(t)} \frac{d P(t)}{d t} & =0.035-0.001 t=r(t) \\
P(t) & =P_{0} e^{\delta \delta r(w) d w} \\
P(15) & =1,000,000 e^{\int_{0}^{15}[0.035-0.001 w] d w} \\
& =1,510,590
\end{aligned}
$$

37. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
P(30) & =1,000,000 e^{\int \mathrm{J}^{30}\left[0.01+0.0001 w^{2}\right] d w} \\
& =3,320,117
\end{aligned}
$$

38. 

$$
\frac{d P(t)}{d t}=2 \alpha^{2}\left(t_{0}-t\right)^{-3}
$$

The birthrate approaches $+\infty$ as $t \rightarrow t_{0}$.
39.

$$
\begin{aligned}
P(30) & =1,000,000 \exp \left\{\int_{0}^{30}\left[0.02+10^{-6} w^{3}\right] d w\right\} \\
& =2,231,112 \\
P(t) & =1,000,000 e^{0.02 t+10^{-6} t^{4} / 4}
\end{aligned}
$$

40. Let $t=0$ represent 1950, and $t=20$ represent 1970 . The given data imply

$$
\begin{aligned}
P(0) & =16=\left(\frac{\alpha}{t_{0}}\right)^{2}, \text { and } \\
P(20) & =25=\left(\frac{\alpha}{t_{0}-20}\right)^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Taking square roots and solving, one obtains $t_{0}=100$, and $\alpha=400$. Thus,

$$
P(t)=\left(\frac{400}{100-t}\right)^{2}
$$

As $t \rightarrow 100$ (the year 2050), the population explodes to $+\infty$.
42.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d P(t)}{d t} & =0.01 P(t)-5 \times 10^{-9}[P(t)]^{2} \\
& =0.01 P(t)\left[1-\frac{5}{10^{7}} P(t)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

with $P(0)=1,000,000$.
Comparing this with the differential equation

$$
\frac{d P(t)}{d t}=r P(t)\left[1-\frac{P(t)}{a}\right]
$$

we have $r=0.01$ and $a=2,000,000$, and at $P(t)=1,000,000$, or $a / 2$ we have $t_{0}=0$. Thus the required logistic is

$$
P(t)=\frac{2,000,000}{1+e^{-0.011}} .
$$

The ultimate population is $2,000,000$ regardless of where on the curve $P_{0}$ is. The asymptote is determined by the differential equation and does not depend on the initial condition that locates the origin on the chart.
43. The first matrix translates to the graph


This is not irreducible (cannot leave state 1 ).
The second matrix translates to the graph


This is irreducible; primitive with $R=4$. We have $M^{4}=M M^{3}$, or

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\begin{array}{llll}
1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right) & =\left(\begin{array}{llll}
1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{llll}
2 & 3 & 2 & 3 \\
1 & 1 & 1 & 2 \\
1 & 2 & 1 & 2 \\
1 & 1 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{llll}
4 & 5 & 3 & 5 \\
2 & 3 & 1 & 2 \\
2 & 3 & 2 & 3 \\
1 & 1 & 1 & 2
\end{array}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

The third matrix converts to the graph


The graph is not irreducible.
44. No; from state 6 , the process goes nowhere. If one connects age groups 5 and 6 with age group 1, and drops the connection between age groups 4 and 1 , the graph is primitive with $R=26$. The matrix $M$, and its eighth and twenty-sixth powers are

$$
\begin{aligned}
M=\left(\begin{array}{llllll}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0
\end{array}\right), \quad M^{8}=\left(\begin{array}{llllll}
0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right), \\
M^{26}=\left(\begin{array}{rrrrrr}
5 & 10 & 10 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\
1 & 5 & 10 & 10 & 5 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 5 & 10 & 10 & 4 \\
4 & 1 & 1 & 5 & 10 & 6 \\
6 & 4 & 1 & 1 & 5 & 4 \\
4 & 6 & 4 & 1 & 1 & 1
\end{array}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

45. 



The matrix

$$
M=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 \\
1 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right) .
$$

One can verify that $M^{3}=I$, and hence $M^{4}=M$. Although each position is positive at one time or another, the matrix never fills up with positive numbers. Thus the graph is not primitive.

Change the graph to


Then

$$
M^{*}=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
0 & 1 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 1 \\
1 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right) \text { and }\left(M^{*}\right)^{5}=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
2 & 1 & 2 \\
1 & 1 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 2
\end{array}\right) .
$$

46. At stability let the stable vector be $(p, q)$, so that $r_{11} p+r_{12} q=\lambda p$. If $r_{12}$ and $q$ are both positive then $r_{11} p<\lambda p$, therefore, $r_{11}<\lambda$. Similarly, from $r_{21} p+r_{22} q=\lambda q$ we have $r_{22}<\lambda$. (We exclude the trivial case in which either $p=0$ or $q=0$ and hence the other equals 0 .) The result is easy to see graphically. Since $\lambda$ is the dominant root of the equation

$$
\left|\begin{array}{cc}
r_{11}-\lambda & r_{12} \\
r_{21} & r_{22}-\lambda
\end{array}\right|=0,
$$

or $\left(r_{11}-\lambda\right)\left(r_{22}-\lambda\right)-r_{21} r_{12}=0$, then $\left(r_{11}-\lambda\right)\left(r_{22}-\lambda\right)$ being a parabola concave upward, intersecting the abscissa at $r_{11}$ and $r_{22}$, its intersections with the horizontal line at $r_{21} r_{12}$ must be larger than $r_{22}$ and smaller than $r_{11}<r_{22}$. By considering derivatives we see that the dominant value $\lambda_{1}$ must be at the point marked, and that it must be to the right of both $r_{11}$ and $r_{22}$.

47. If $r_{21}=0$, the graph is

and passage from $x_{1}$ is impossible. Comparable results hold when $r_{12}=0$.
48. (a) Let $P^{(t+1)}=\binom{u^{P(t+1)}}{P^{(t+1)}}$ be the urban and rural populations at time $t+$. The growth matrix $G=\left(\begin{array}{cc}1.01 & 0 \\ 0 & 1.02\end{array}\right)$, and the movement matrix $M=\left(\begin{array}{ll}0.999 & 0.009 \\ 0.001 & 0.991\end{array}\right)$. The transition matrix is

$$
T=M G=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
1.00899 & 0.00918 \\
0.00101 & 1.01082
\end{array}\right) \fallingdotseq\left(\begin{array}{ll}
1.009 & 0.009 \\
0.001 & 1.011
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Since all entries in $T$ are positive, the graph is irreducible, and primitive. $P^{(t+1)}$ is found from the equation $P^{(t+1)}=T P^{(t)}$.
(b) $P^{(1)}=M G\binom{1,000,000}{1,000,000}=M\binom{1,010,000}{1,020,000}=\binom{1,018,170}{1,011,830}$.

Note the reversal of the larger components.
(c) The quantity $\lambda$ (ultimate ratio of increase) is the dominant root of the equation

$$
\left|\begin{array}{cc}
1.009-\lambda & 0.009 \\
0.001 & 1.011-\lambda
\end{array}\right|=0 \quad \text { or } \quad \lambda^{2}-2.02 \lambda+1.02=0
$$

The dominant root is $\lambda=1.02$.
(d) For large $t$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
{ }_{u} P^{(t+1)} & =\lambda\left({ }_{u} P^{(t)}\right) \\
& =1.02\left({ }_{u} P^{(t)}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

For large $t,{ }_{r} P^{(t)}=c\left({ }_{u} P^{(t)}\right)$ for some constant $c$.

But

$$
{ }_{u} P^{(t+1)}=r_{11}\left({ }_{u} P^{(l)}\right)+r_{12}\left({ }_{r} P^{(t)}\right),
$$

or

$$
{ }_{u} P^{(t+1)}=\left(r_{11}+c r_{12}\right)\left({ }_{u} P^{(t)}\right) .
$$

Thus, $\lambda=r_{11} t_{12} c r_{12}$, which implies that $c=1.222$.
49. States of nature: $W$ or $S$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
W_{t+1} & =W_{t}+0.007 W_{t}-0.0002 W_{t}-0.01 W_{t}+0.005 S_{t} \\
S_{t+1} & =S_{t}+0.01 W_{t}-0.005 S_{t}-0.001 S_{t} \\
\cdot & \quad\binom{W_{t+1}}{S_{t+1}}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0.9968 & 0.0050 \\
0.0100 & 0.9940
\end{array}\right)\binom{W_{t}}{S_{t}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The matrix is primitive with $R=1$.
50. (a) The first graph is


The second graph is


The third graph is

(b) The corresponding matrix is

$$
\left(\begin{array}{lllll}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

51. The corresponding matrix is

$$
\left(\begin{array}{lllll}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right)=M
$$

The first row of any power of $M$ will be all zeros, and hence a stable condition will not be reached.
52. The existing matrix is reflected in the graph:


To make this irreducible, one needs to go from $x_{3}$ to $x_{1}$, and from $x_{3}$ to $x_{4}$.
Hence, we add the elements $m_{13}=1$, and $m_{43}=1$. (There exist other solutions.)
53.

$$
\left(\begin{array}{llll}
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{llll}
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{llll}
1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\
1 & 1 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right)
$$


54. The existing matrix is reflected in the graph:


To make this irreducible, we go from $x_{4}$ to $x_{5}$, from $x_{5}$ to $x_{6}$, from $x_{6}$ to $x_{1}$, and from $x_{1}$ to $x_{2}$.

The following enlarged matrix $M$ is primitive with all of the entries of $M^{9}$ being positive.

$$
M=\left(\begin{array}{llllll}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

55. This problem is similar to Problem 31. The growth rate $r=0.04$, the "birth" rate $b=0.10$, and hence the fraction of the engineers who are alive and practicing is $0.04 / 0.10=0.4$.
56. If $p_{1}, p_{2}$, and $p_{3}$ represent the populations in 1940,1970 , and 2000 , we have the formula

$$
300,000,000=\frac{1 / p_{1}+1 / p_{3}-2 / p_{2}}{1 /\left(p_{1} p_{3}\right)-1 / p_{2}^{2}}
$$

Substituting the given values yields $p_{3}=254,400,000$.
57. The equations

$$
132,000,000=\frac{\alpha}{t_{e}-1940} \text { and } 203,000,000=\frac{\alpha}{t_{e}-1970}
$$

yield $t_{e}=2025.775$. Either equation then gives $\alpha \fallingdotseq 11,322,300,000$. This provides the value $P_{2000}=439,300,000$. This is much higher than the logistic extrapolation, and reflects the population "explosion" built into the hyperbola model in year 2026.
58. Two answers to this problem will be given, based on pages 14-16 of Keyfitz (1977), and pages 12-13 of Inequalities by E. F. Beckenbach and R. Bellman, Springer-Verlag, NY, 1965.

At time $t$, the projections would be $P_{1} e^{r_{1} t}, P_{2} e^{r_{2} t}$, and $\left(P_{1}+P_{2}\right) e^{r t}$. Denote the sum $P_{1} e^{r_{1} t}+P_{2} e^{r_{2} t}$ by $P(t)$. Its rate of increase would be

$$
\check{r}(t)=\frac{1}{P(t)} \frac{d P(t)}{d t}=\frac{P_{1} r_{1} e^{r_{1} t}+P_{2} r_{2} e^{r_{2} t}}{P_{1} e^{r_{1} t}+P_{2} e^{r_{2} t}} .
$$

One can show that

$$
\frac{d \bar{r}(t)}{d t}=\frac{P_{1} P_{2} e^{\left(r_{1}+r_{2}\right) t}\left(r_{1}-r_{2}\right)^{2}}{\left(P_{1} e^{r_{1} t}+P_{2} e^{r_{2} t}\right)^{2}}
$$

which is positive, unless $r_{1}=r_{2}$. By contrast,

$$
\frac{d}{d t}\left\{\frac{\left(P_{1}+P_{2}\right) r e^{r t}}{\left(P_{1}+P_{2}\right) e^{r t}}\right\}=0
$$

Thus the sum of the separate projections is greater.
The second proof relies on the arithmetic-mean-geometric-mean inequality with arbitrary positive weights $\alpha, 1-\alpha$, which is

$$
\alpha x_{1}+(1-\alpha) x_{2} \geq x_{1}^{\alpha} x_{2}^{1-\alpha}, \quad 0<\alpha<1,
$$

arbitrary $x_{1}, x_{2} \geq 0$. The equality holds if and only if $x_{1}=x_{2}$. The separate projection of the two populations is $P_{1} e^{r_{1} t}+P_{2} e^{r_{2} t}$, whereas the combined projection is $\left(P_{1}+P_{2}\right) e^{r t}$. The sum of the separate projections is greater if

$$
\frac{P_{1}}{P_{1}+P_{2}} e^{r_{1} t}+\frac{P_{2}}{P_{1}+P_{2}} e^{r_{2} t}>e^{r t} .
$$

Letting

$$
\alpha=\frac{P_{1}}{P_{1}+P_{2}}, \quad x_{1}=e^{r_{1} t}, \quad x_{2}=e^{r_{2} t}
$$

in the A.M.-G.M. inequality, we can see that the desired result holds.

## CHAPTER II

The Life Table

A life table is a mathematical model which portrays
(a) probabilities of dying at the several ages;
(b) diminution of a cohort as it grows older;
(c) a stationary population.

The construction of a life table begins with the collection and analysis of data. Such population statistics will have been gathered by a national census department, a state vital statistics unit, a life insurance company, a consulting actuarial firm, a medical research team, or possibly a pharmaceutical house. Graduation of data helps remove irregularities produced by errors and randomness. A third step is the conversion of data into appropriate rates, and thence into probabilities. A fourth step is obtaining individual age values for the various functions by interpolation formulas. A fifth step is to use approximate integration techniques to obtain functions of the basic $l(x)$ column.

Life tables are used by actuaries, vital statisticians, and medical researchers to determine life insurance premiums, pension values, gains in life expectancy of a people, and decreased probabilities of death from improved drugs and surgical techniques.

### 2.1. Mathematical Concepts

The basic life table column is $l(x), 0 \leq x \leq \omega$. That function represents the numbers of living at all ages up to the "final" age $\omega$. In some cases, we are only interested in this function at the non-negative integers $x=0,1,2, \ldots$, and
the function will be written as $l_{x}$. A second column is $d_{x}, x=0,1,2, \ldots$, the number of deaths between ages $x$ and $x+1$, i.e., $d_{x}=l_{x}-l_{x+1}$. The probability of dying between ages $x$ and $x+1$ is $q_{x}$. Thus $q_{x}=d_{x} / l_{x}$. The function

$$
L_{x}=\int_{0}^{1} l(x+t) d t
$$

and its extension is

$$
T_{x}=\int_{0}^{\omega-x} l(x+t) d t
$$

The complete expectation of life at age $x$ is denoted and defined by

$$
\dot{e}_{x}=\frac{1}{l_{x}} T_{x}=\int_{0}^{\omega-x} \frac{l(x+t)}{l_{x}} d t
$$

The curtate expectation of life

$$
e_{x}=\frac{1}{l_{x}} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} l_{x+n}
$$

These two functions are related by the approximate equation $\dot{e}_{x} \fallingdotseq e_{x}+0.5$.
There is another life table function which is most useful but frequently not printed in tables. That is the force of mortality, denoted and defined as follows:

$$
\mu(x)=-\frac{1}{l(x)} \frac{d l(x)}{d x}
$$

This is equivalent to

$$
\mu(x)=-\frac{d}{d x} \ln _{e} l(x)
$$

After integration and exponentiation, this becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
l(x)=l(0) \exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{x} \mu(y) d y\right\} \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

a special case of the expression for population increase of Chapter I. The quantity $l(0)$ or $l_{0}$ is called the radix of a life table. It is chosen for convenience and may be a number such as 100,000 . The probability of living from age $x$ to age $x+n$ is defined by

$$
{ }_{n} p_{x}=l_{x+n} / l_{x}
$$

Properties of integrals and exponents allow us to write

$$
\begin{aligned}
{ }_{n} p_{x} & =\exp \left\{-\int_{x}^{x+n} \mu(y) d y\right\} \\
& =\exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{n} \mu(x+t) d t\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

The complementary probability

$$
\begin{aligned}
{ }_{n} q_{x} & =1-{ }_{n} p_{x} \\
& =1-\exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{n} \mu(x+t) d t\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

The basic definition of $\mu(x)$ can be rewritten as $l(x) \mu(x)=-(d / d x) l(x)$. If one integrates both sides, uses the fundamental theorem of calculus, and changes variables, one obtains

$$
l_{x}-l_{x+n}=\int_{0}^{n} l(x+t) \mu(x+t) d t
$$

The probability ${ }_{n} q_{x}$ can be obtained by dividing both sides by $l_{x}$ :

$$
{ }_{n} q_{x}=\frac{l_{x}-l_{x+n}}{l_{x}}=\int_{0}^{n}{ }_{0} p_{x} \mu(x+t) d t .
$$

A number of people have attempted to describe the $l(x)$ function in an analytic form. One such expression was published in 1860 by W. M. Makeham in the article "On the law of mortality, and the construction of annuity tables," which appeared in Volume 8 of the Journal of the Institute of Actuaries. He wrote $\mu_{x}=A+B c^{x}$ to reflect a geometrically growing force coupled with a constant exposure to accidents. Makeham's mortality law built upon the earlier expression $\mu_{x}=B c^{x}$ contained in the 1825 paper by B. Gompertz entitled "On the nature of the function expressive of the law of human mortality," Philosophical Transactions, Royal Society of London.

By assuming "the average exhaustion of a man's power to avoid death to be such that at the end of equal infinitely small intervals of time he lost equal portions of his remaining power to oppose destruction which he had at the commencement of these intervals," Gompertz was led to the differential equation

$$
\frac{d}{d x}\left(\frac{1}{\mu(x)}\right)=-h \frac{1}{\mu(x)}
$$

where $h$ is a constant of proportionality. Upon integration,

$$
\ln \left(\frac{1}{\mu(x)}\right)=-h x-\ln B
$$

where $-\ln B$ is a constant of integration. Thus, $\mu_{x}=e^{h x+\ln B}=B c^{x}$, for $c=e^{h}$.

Makeham's law leads to $l_{x}=k s^{x} g^{c^{x}}$ where $\ln s=-A, \ln g=-B / \ln c$, and $k=l_{0} / g$.

Census records do not produce values of $l_{x}$, but rather numbers of people whose age is between $x$ and $x+1$. Thus, the numbers which are collected
relate more to the function

$$
L_{x}=\int_{0}^{1} l(x+t) d t
$$

for $x=0,1,2, \ldots$. Moreover, the rate $d_{x} / L_{x}$ is not $q_{x}$. Instead, it is what is called the central death rate at age $x$ and denoted by $m_{x}$. Thus, $m_{x}=d_{x} / L_{x}$. If one assumes a uniform distribution of deaths throughout the year of age,

$$
l(x+t)=l_{x}-t d_{x}, \quad 0 \leq t \leq 1 .
$$

Then, $L_{x}=\int_{0}^{1} l(x+t) d t=l_{x}-\frac{1}{2} d_{x}$,

$$
m_{x}=\frac{q_{x}}{1-\frac{1}{2} q_{x}} \quad \text { and } \quad q_{x}=\frac{m_{x}}{1+\frac{1}{2} m_{x}} .
$$

This last formula suggests how observed rates can be used to obtain probabilities. The word "suggests" is appropriate because the census people do not observe $d_{x}$ and $L_{x}$, but rather $d_{x}^{2}$ and $L_{x}^{z}$ where the superscript $z$ denotes a calendar year $z$. Thus the observed rate $d_{x}^{2} / L_{x}^{z}$ is denoted by a different symbol, $M_{x}^{z}$. We will drop the $z$ portion of the symbol, but retain the $M$ to distinguish it from the corresponding $m$ rate.

Let the function $p(x), 0 \leq x \leq \omega$, represent the population under study, and the basis for a future life table. The population aged $x$ to $x+n$ is denoted and defined by

$$
{ }_{n} P_{x}=\int_{0}^{n} p(x+t) d t .
$$

Such a population at time $t$ will be called ${ }_{n} P_{x}^{(t)}$.
Most of our previous definitions can be extended to $n$ year intervals. The following definitions will be needed.
${ }_{n} a_{x} \quad$ Average number of years lived between ages $x$ and $x+n$ by those dying in that age interval.
${ }_{n} d_{x} \quad$ Number dying in the stationary population between ages $x$ and $x+n:{ }_{n} d_{x}=l_{x}-l_{x+n}$.
${ }_{n} D_{x} \quad$ Deaths observed between ages $x$ and $x+n$.
${ }_{n} D_{x}^{(i)} \quad$ Deaths observed between ages $x$ and $x+n$ due to cause $i$.
${ }_{n} L_{x} \quad$ Number living in life table between ages $x$ and $x+n:{ }_{n} L_{x}=$ $\int_{0}^{n} l(x+t) d t$.
${ }_{n} M_{x}$ Observed age-specific death rate for individual between exact ages $x$ and $x+n$.
${ }_{n} m_{x}$ Age-specific death rate in the life table population: ${ }_{n} m_{x}=$ ${ }_{n} d_{x} / n L_{x}\left({ }_{1} m_{x}=m_{x}\right)$.
${ }_{n} q_{x} \quad$ Probability of dying within $n$ years for individuals now of exact age $x:{ }_{n} q_{x}={ }_{n} d_{x} / l_{x}\left({ }_{1} q_{x}=q_{x}\right)$.
The last function should not be confused with ${ }_{n} \mid q_{x}$ which is the probability that a person now aged $x$ will die between ages $x+n$ and $x+n+1$.

Users of life tables for specific geographic areas obtain valuable information by comparing such rates with those from a standard population, such as a current U.S. Life Table. The symbols

$$
{ }_{n} P_{x}^{s},{ }_{n}^{m} P_{x}^{s},{ }_{n}^{f} P_{x}^{s},{ }_{n} D_{x}^{s},{ }_{n}^{m} D_{x}^{s} \text {, and }{ }_{n}^{\mathrm{f}} D_{x}^{s}
$$

denote total population, male population, female population, total deaths, male deaths, and female deaths from the standard life table for the age range $x$ to $x+n$. To filter out the effects of the population age distribution on the crude death rates, there are adjusted rates. The adjusted death rate by the direct method is

$$
\frac{\sum_{x} n_{x} P_{x}^{s} \cdot{ }_{n} m_{x}}{\sum_{x} P_{x}^{s}} .
$$

The adjusted death rate by the indirect method is

$$
\frac{D}{\sum_{x}{ }_{n} m_{x}^{s} \cdot{ }_{n} P_{x}} \cdot \frac{\sum_{x}{ }_{n}^{s} P_{x}^{s}{ }_{n} m_{x}^{s}}{\sum_{x}{ }_{n} P_{x}^{s}} .
$$

As stated on page 103 of Spiegelman (1968), "the age-adjusted death rate (direct method) is the crude death rate which would be observed in the standard population if it had itself experienced the age-specific death rates of the community or state in question." If the age-specific death rates for the community are not available, the indirect method of adjustment must be followed.

The life table describes a stationary population supported by $l_{0}$ annual births distributed uniformly over each calendar year, whose deaths occur in accordance with the given vector $\left\{q_{0}, q_{1}, \ldots, q_{\omega-1}\right\}$, and for which there is no migration into or out of the population. The word stationary reflects the constant age distribution $\left\{l_{0}, l_{1}, \ldots, l_{\omega-1}\right\}$ for the population. The assumption of a constant number $B$ of births each year can be generalized by assuming that births follow an exponential function $B e^{r t}, t \geq 0$, where $r$ is the growth rate. This will affect the age distributions in future years. Consider a population closed to migration and subject to a fixed vector $\left\{q_{0}, q_{1}, \ldots, q_{\omega-1}\right\}$, with births increasing exponentially. These three conditions produce a stable age distribution in which three quantities are increasing exponentially in the same ratio. Those three quantities are the total population, the number of persons living in each age group, and the deaths in each age group. Stable population theory and problems will be treated in Chapter III. One result will be needed now for a few problems. That says that the function $l(x)$ should be replaced by $e^{-r x} l(x), 0 \leq x \leq \omega$, to reflect the smaller number of births $x$ years ago. That is, the normal interpretation of $l_{x}$ as the expected survivors to age $x$ from $l_{0}$ births does not apply in a growing population.

The Society of Actuaries' textbook Actuarial Mathematics by Bowers, Gerber, Hickman, Jones, and Nesbitt (1983) discusses life tables in Chapter 3. It adopts "the basic viewpoint that a life table is a way of specifying the distribution of the random variable time until death." The random survivorship group is contrasted with the deterministic survivorship group. If one denotes by $L(x)$ the random number of survivors to age $x$, then $E[L(x)]$ and $l_{x}$ represent the same quantity. Similarly, if ${ }_{n} D_{x}$ denotes the random number of deaths between ages $x$ and $x+n$, then $E\left[{ }_{n} D_{x}\right]$ and ${ }_{n} d_{x}$ have the same value. Readers would profit from a study of life tables in Actuarial Mathematics. The problems in this chapter are concerned with a deterministic survivorship group, converting census records to rates to probabilities, adjusting death rates by standard populations, and life table functions.

### 2.2. Problems

### 2.2.1. Various Death Rates and Ratios

For Problems 1-5, you have the following hypothetical data set
Indiana

| Age group | ${ }_{n} P_{x}^{s}$ | ${ }_{n}{ }^{\text {P }}{ }^{s}$ s | ${ }_{7} P_{x}^{s}$ | ${ }_{n} D_{x}^{s}$ | ${ }_{n}^{m} D_{x}^{3}$ | ${ }_{n} D_{x}^{s}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| <1 | 100,000 | 50,000 | 50,000 | 750 | 400 | 350 |
| 1-4 | 400,000 | 200,000 | 200,000 | 3,000 | 1,600 | 1,400 |
| 5-20 | 1,500,000 | 750,000 | 750,000 | 12,000 | 6,500 | 5,500 |
| 21-100 | 4,000,000 | 1,500,000 | 2,500,000 | 31,000 | 12,000 | 19,000 |

Muncie

| Age <br> group | ${ }_{n} P_{x}$ | ${ }_{n}^{m} P_{x}$ | ${ }_{n}{ }_{n} P_{x}$ | ${ }_{n} D_{x}$ | ${ }_{n}^{m} D_{x}$ | ${ }_{n} D_{x}$ |
| :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| $<1$ | 1,500 | 750 | 750 | 12 | 6 | 6 |
| $1-4$ | 6,000 | 3,000 | 3,000 | 45 | 24 | 21 |
| $5-20$ | 20,000 | 10,000 | 10,000 | 160 | 85 | 75 |
| $21-100$ | 44,000 | 17,000 | 27,000 | 350 | 200 | 150 |

1. Compute the crude death rates for Indiana and Muncie.
2. Compute the $24{ }_{n} m_{\dot{x}}$ rates.
3. Regard Indiana as the standard population for Muncie. Compute the adjusted death rate for Muncie by the direct method.
4. Repeat Problem 3 by the indirect method.
5. Compute the age-sex-adjusted rate for Muncie.
6. Derive the expression for Variance $(M)$, where

$$
M=\frac{D}{P}=\sum_{x}\left(\frac{P_{x}}{P}\right) M_{x}
$$

if all deaths occur independently.
The next seven problems should use Census Bureau data for your SMSA chosen in Chapter I, Problem 17. Use Table 7-4 of "Vital Statistics of the United States, 1975, Vol. II, Mortality, Part B." Record deaths for the various age groups by sex. Also use " 1970 Census of Population, Vol. 1, Characteristics of the Population" for the appropriate state. Chapter B gives numbers alive for various age groups. Use 1960 and 1970 volumes and data to extrapolate to 1975 data.
7. Create central death rates for the various age groups, by sex.
8. Compute crude death rates for 1960, and 1975.
9. Compare the death rates for 1960 and 1975 for your SMSA due to malignant neoplasms versus major cardiovascular diseases.
10. Compute the infant mortality rates for 1960 and 1975.
11. Calculate the adjusted death rate (direct method). The standard population figures are for the state or possibly states surrounding your SMSA.
12. Calculate the age-sex-adjusted death rates.
13. Calculate the adjusted death rate (indirect method).
14. Calculate the variances and standard deviations for the crude death rate, adjusted death rate (direct method), adjusted death rate (indirect method) for your SMSA.
15. Let $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$ be independent random variables, each having distribution

$$
X= \begin{cases}1, & \text { with prob. } q_{x} \\ 0, & \text { with prob. } p_{x}\end{cases}
$$

Define a random variable

$$
R=\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i} / E\left\{\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_{i}\right\} .
$$

(a) Find $E(R)$.
(b) Justify an expression for $\operatorname{Var}(R)$.
(c) Set up 95 percent confidence limits for $R$.
(d) How would you use these ideas in analyzing the mortality data for your SMSA? What standard population did you use for purposes of comparison? What second standard population might you have considered?
16. Assuming a uniform distribution of deaths, express $q_{x}^{2}$ and $m_{x}^{2}$ in terms of population data and deaths. How are $q_{x}^{z}$ and $m_{x}^{2}$ related? Does it seem reasonable that one is smaller than the other? Why?
17. Explain how a chi-squared goodness of fit test can be used in a mortality study.

### 2.2.2. Life Table Functions and Distributions

18. Fill out the several columns of the life table below for Bulgaria males, 1965:

| $\boldsymbol{x}$ | ${ }_{5} q_{x}$ | $l_{x}$ | ${ }^{s} d_{x}$ | ${ }_{s} L_{x}$ | ${ }^{5} m_{x}$ | $T_{x}$ | $\dot{e}_{x}$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 20 | 0.006338 | 94,864 |  |  |  | $5,024,927$ |  |
| 25 | 0.006650 |  |  |  | , |  |  |
| 30 | 0.008087 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 35 |  | 92,879 |  | . | . |  |  |

employing the usual definitions plus: ${ }_{5} L_{x}=\frac{5}{2}\left(l_{x}+l_{x+5}\right) ; T_{x+5}=T_{x}-{ }_{5} L_{x}$.
19. If the average annual probability of dying between exact ages 20 and 30 is 0.001 , what is $l_{30} / l_{20}$ ?
20. Prove and interpret

$$
\dot{e}_{x}=\frac{5 L_{x}}{l_{x}}+\frac{l_{x+5}}{l_{x}} \dot{e}_{x+5} .
$$

21. Define in symbols $\bar{x}_{\boldsymbol{D}}$, the mean age at death in the stationary population. Prove that it is the same as the expectation of life $\dot{e}_{0}$, defined as

$$
\int_{0}^{\infty} l(t) d t / l_{0} .
$$

22. Find a usable expression for ${ }_{5} L_{x}$ by expanding $l(x+t)$ through Newton's advancing difference formula, and then integrating. Assume $\Delta^{3} l_{x}=\Delta^{3} l_{x-5}$.

Hint: Consult Kellison (1975) for Newton's formula.
23. Express $d_{x}$ as an integral and show that this integral is equivalent to $l_{x}-l_{x+1}$.
24. The de Moivre model was an early attempt to describe $l_{x}, 0 \leq x \leq \omega$. It said that $l_{x}=a+b x, 0 \leq x \leq \omega$, for some values of $a$ and $b$. What are the values of ${ }_{5} d_{20}$ and ${ }_{5} d_{70}$ in such a table?
25. The uniform distribution of deaths (UDD) over 1 year of age assumption says $q_{x}=t q_{x}, 0 \leq t \leq 1$. With this assumption, provide a proof (or even two!) that

$$
\mu_{x+t}=\frac{q_{x}}{1-t \cdot q_{x}}, \quad 0 \leq t \leq 1 .
$$

26. Show that! with UDD,

$$
l_{x+t}=l_{x}-t \cdot d_{x}, \quad 0 \leq t \leq 1
$$

27. Show that with UDD,

$$
{ }_{1-s} q_{x+t}=\frac{(1-s) q_{x}}{1-t q_{x}}=(1-s) \mu_{x+t}, \quad 0 \leq t \leq s \leq 1
$$

28. The Balducci distribution of deaths (BDD) was developed by the Italian actuary Gaetano Balducci in 1920. It says that ${ }_{1-1} q_{x+t}=(1-t) q_{x}$, $0 \leq t \leq 1$. Prove that with this assumption,

$$
\mu_{x+t}=\frac{q_{x}}{1-(1-t) q_{x}}, \quad 0 \leq t \leq 1 .
$$

29. Under BDD, show

$$
l_{x+t}=\frac{l_{x} \cdot l_{x+1}}{l_{x+1}+t \cdot d_{x}}, \quad 0 \leq t \leq 1
$$

30. Under BDD, show

$$
q_{x}=\frac{t\left(q_{x}\right)}{1-(1-t) q_{x}}, \quad 0 \leq t \leq 1
$$

31. Assume a constant force of mortality over a given unit age interval, i.e., $\mu_{x+t}=\mu, 0 \leq t \leq 1$.
(a) Prove that $q_{x}=1-e^{-\mu t}, 0 \leq t \leq 1$.
(b) Prove that ${ }_{1-t} q_{x+t}=1-e^{-\mu(1-t)}, 0 \leq t \leq 1$.
(c) Prove that $l_{x+t}=l_{x} \cdot e^{-\mu t}, 0 \leq t \leq 1$.
(d) Use the results of (a), (b), and (c) to show that ${ }_{1 / 2} q_{x}=1_{1 / 2} q_{x+1 / 2}=$ ${ }_{1 / 2} q_{x+1 / 4}$.
32. (a) Under the constant force assumption, prove that $p_{x}=\left(p_{x}\right)^{1 / t}$, $0<t \leq 1$.
(b) Given $p_{x}=0.64$, find ${ }_{1 / 2} p_{x}$ and ${ }_{1 / 6} p_{x}$.
33. Assume that the observed ratios ${ }_{n} r_{x}^{i}={ }_{n} D_{x}^{i} / n D_{x}$ of dying from cause $i$ also hold in a life table. Let ${ }_{n} p_{x}^{(-i)}$ be the probability of living from age $x$ to age $x+n$ in a life table derived by eliminating deaths from cause $i$. Prove that ${ }_{n} p_{x}^{(-i)}=\left({ }_{n} p_{x}\right)^{\left(1-n^{\prime} t_{x}^{\prime}\right)}$.
34. Refer to Problem 33 above. What further steps are needed to obtain an expression for $e_{x}^{(-i)}-\tilde{e}_{x}$, the gain in life expectation effected by eliminating cause $i$.
35. Assuming that deaths are uniformly distributed throughout the year, show that

$$
\dot{e}_{x}=\frac{1}{2} q_{x}+\frac{3}{2}\left(1 \mid q_{x}\right)+\frac{5}{2}\left(2 \mid q_{x}\right)+\cdots,
$$

where ${ }_{n} \mid q_{x}$ is the probability that a person now aged $x$ will die between ages $x+n$ and $x+n+1$.
36. Assume $l(x)$ is linear between ages $x$ and $x+n$. Prove that

$$
{ }_{n} q_{x}=\frac{2 n\left({ }_{n} m_{x}\right)}{2+n\left({ }_{n} m_{x}\right)}
$$

37. Assume that only one census is available, and it is felt that the population is growing uniformly at rate $r$. How would you construct a life table?
38. Prove that

$$
p_{x}^{(-i)}=\frac{l_{x+1}+\frac{1}{2}\left(d_{x}^{i}\right)}{l_{x}-\frac{1}{2}\left(d_{x}^{i}\right)}
$$

39. Let ${ }_{n} g_{x}$ equal average amount of time lost between ages $x$ and $x+n$ by those who die during that age interval. Geometrically illustrate why

$$
{ }_{n} g_{x}=\frac{n\left(l_{x}\right)-{ }_{n} L_{x}}{{ }_{n} d_{x}} .
$$

40. Assume that ${ }_{n} \hat{m}_{x}^{A}=\frac{9}{1000}$ and ${ }_{n} \hat{m}_{x}^{B}=\frac{14}{1100 .}$. What statistical hypotheses $H_{0}$ and $H_{1}$ would you set up? Do you accept $H_{0}$ at the 5 percent significance level?
41. The function $\dot{e}_{x}$ can be defined in terms of $\sum_{n=0}^{\omega} L_{x+n}$, and $l_{x}$. However, it is possible to proceed directly from $q_{x}$ to $\dot{e}_{x}$ by a recursion relation. What is it? Justify its validity. Define the functions which are involved.
42. From the information given below, calculate the probability that a person aged 55 will die before age 60 .

|  |  |  | Deaths <br> Attained age |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Exposure | Deaths | Exposure |  |
| $50-54$ | 20,954 | 250 | 0.01193 |
| $55-59$ | 15,990 | 292 | 0.01826 |
| $60-64$ | 10,736 | 301 | 0.02804 |

43. If $l(y)$ is a quadratic, $x-5 \leq y \leq x+5$, express $\mu(x)$ in terms of $l_{x-5}, l_{x}$, and $l_{x+5}$.
44. How fast does $\mu(x)$ have to rise with age for $l(x)$ to be concave downward?
45. Defining $\int_{0}^{n} \mu(x+t) d t$ as $-\ln \left(l_{x+n} / l_{x}\right)$, show that

$$
\int_{0}^{n} \mu(x+t) d t=q+\frac{q^{2}}{2}+\frac{q^{3}}{3}+\cdots
$$

without approximation, where $q=1-l_{x+n} / l_{x}$. Show also that

$$
{ }_{n} m_{x}=\frac{1}{n}\left(q+\frac{q^{2}}{2}+\frac{q^{3}}{4}+\cdots\right)
$$

wherever the mortality curve is rising with age. Hence show that ${ }_{n} m_{x}<\bar{\mu}$, i.e., the life table death rate is less than the mean force of mortality, $e^{-n_{n} m_{x}}>e^{-n \bar{\mu}}$, and therefore, to put $l_{x+n} / l_{x}$ equal to $e^{-n_{n} m_{x}}$ unduly raises the curve of $l_{x}$ over all ages after about 10 .
46. Prove the inequalities
(a) $q_{x}<m_{x}<\frac{q_{x}}{1-q_{x}}$.
(b) $\frac{m_{x}}{1+m_{x}}<q_{x}<m_{x}$.
47. Prove by integration by parts in ${ }_{n} L_{x}=\int_{0}^{n} l(x+t) d t$ that ${ }_{n} L_{x}=$ $n l_{x+n}+{ }_{n} a_{x}\left(l_{x}-l_{x+n}\right)$, where ${ }_{n} a_{x}$ is the mean years lived after age $x$ by those dying before age $x+n$. Justify the same expression in words.
48. If

$$
a_{x}=\frac{L_{x}-l_{x+1}}{l_{x}-l_{x+1}} \quad \text { and } \quad m_{x}=\frac{l_{x}-l_{x+1}}{L_{x}}
$$

are both known, show how they together determine $l_{x+1} / l_{x}$ and $L_{x}$, and hence that $a_{x}$ and $m_{x}$ together suffice to provide all columns of the life table.
49. If the mean age of men dying between 40 and 44 at last birthday is 42.6863 , and the age-specific death rate for men $40-44$ is 0.004314 , find the probability that a man aged 40 will survive to exact age 45 . (Data for Austrian males, 1950-1952.)

### 2.2.3. Modifications to Life Tables

50. A life table is modified by adding 0.001 to $\mu(a)$ at every age. What does this do to the $l_{x},{ }_{5} q_{x},{ }_{5} L_{x}$, and $\dot{e}_{x}$ ?
51. A life table is modified by multiplying $\mu(a)$ for each age by 1.001 . What does this do to the several columns?
52. The probability of surviving from birth to age 25 in a particular human population is 0.89 . How is this altered if the force of mortality at each age is lowered by 0.0001 ?
53. From a model mortality table a second table is prepared by multiplying the previous force of mortality by $k$, a positive integer $\geq 2$. Express the new probability ${ }_{n} \hat{q}_{x}$ in terms of the old ${ }_{n} q_{x}$.
54. How is the probability of living from birth to age 50 affected by a drop in mortality of 0.0001 at age 35 ? By the same drop at age 55?
55. What difference does it make to the value of $\dot{e}_{0}$ if the forces of mortality between ages 30 and 34 at last birthday drop by 0.001 ? Assume no changes in $l(x), x \geq 35$.
56. How much does an error of 0.00001 in $d_{0}$, total deaths under 1 year of age, $\left(l_{0}=1\right)$ affect $\dot{e}_{0}$ ?
57. If infant mortality was reduced by 20 per thousand births in a population, and all other mortality continued unchanged at $e_{0}=70$, by how much would $\dot{e}_{0}$ rise?

### 2.2.4. Force of Mortality and Expectation of Life

58. If the force of mortality $\mu(x)$ is age-independent and equal to 0.02 , in how many years will an initial group of 100,000 babies be reduced to 80,000 ?
59. A man aged 30 marries a woman aged 25 . Express in symbols the expected number of years they will both be alive. If $\mu_{x}$ is constant and equal to 0.02 , evaluate the symbolic expression.
60. (a) Prove that if at age $x$ and above, mortality is fixed at $\mu$, then the expectation of life at age $x$ is $1 / \mu$.
(b) Hence that a decrease by the factor $1-\delta, \delta>0$, in $\mu$ raises the expectation of life to $1 / \mu(1-\delta)$; i.e., if $\delta$ is small subtracting $\delta \mu$ from $\mu$ raises $\dot{e}_{x}$ by approximately $\dot{e}_{x} \delta$. In numbers, a 1 percent decrease in deaths raises the expectation of life by 1 percent.
(c) If $\mu(a)$ is rising for $a>x$, what is an upper bound on $\dot{e}_{x}$ ? How is this changed if $\mu(a)$ is replaced by $(1-\delta) \mu(a), a>x$ ?
61. Suppose that within an age interval $(x, x+n)$ the force of mortality rises in the parabolic form

$$
\mu(x+t)={ }_{n} M_{x}+0.024 t^{2}{ }_{n} M_{x}^{2} .
$$

Show that this produces exactly the life table due to Reed and Merrell (1939), in which

$$
{ }_{n} q_{x}=1-\exp \left[-\left(n_{n} M_{x}+0.008 n_{n}{ }_{n} M_{x}^{2}\right)\right] .
$$

62. The assumption that $M_{x}$ is the constant value of $\mu(x+t)$ at each age within the interval $(x, x+1)$ translates into a probability of living $l_{x+1} / l_{x}=$ $e^{-M_{x}}$. The assumption that ${ }_{1-t} q_{x+t}=(1-t) q_{x}, 0<t<1$ (known as the Balducci assumption) is equivalent to $l_{x}, l_{x+t}$, and $l_{x+1}$ being related as $1 / l_{x+t}=\left(t / l_{x+1}\right)+(1-t) / l_{x}$. Prove both of these statements. What do they respectively imply about the shape of $l(x+t)$ in the interval $0 \leq t \leq 1$ ?
63. The force of mortality $\mu_{x}$ in a certain population increases linearly by 0.002 per year from age 40 , starting at $\mu_{40}=0.01$. What is the probability that a man aged 40 will live to age 70?
64. Assuming a constant force of mortality, $k$, derive an expression for the error involved in the two approximate relations below, and give numerical values of the errors when $k=0.01$.

$$
\begin{align*}
& q_{x}=\frac{2 \mu_{x+1 / 2}}{2+\mu_{x+1 / 2}}  \tag{i}\\
& \mu_{x}=\frac{d_{x-1}+d_{x}}{2 l_{x}}
\end{align*}
$$

Show that if the law followed by the force of mortality were $\mu_{x}=1 /(A-x)$, the foregoing relations would hold exactly ( $A$ is a constant). (Society of Actuaries.)
65. In a stationary population subject to

$$
l(x)=\frac{e^{-0.02 x}+1-0.01 x}{2}, \quad 0 \leq x \leq \omega
$$

what is the value of $\dot{e}_{0}$ ? What is the mean age of death? The mean age of the living? At what age is the absolute number of deaths a maximum? At what age does the last person die?
66. Suppose that $l_{6}=0.64, l_{16}=0.32, l_{26}=0.16, \ldots, l_{66}=0.01$. With the probability of dying over each 10 -year interval equal to $\frac{1}{2}$, calculate a suitable interpolation to age $x$, where $6<x<66$. Find the chance that of three persons aged 6 at least two will be alive 20 years later.
67. The values $l_{x}$ of a life table in which no one lives beyond age 100 are given by

$$
\begin{gathered}
l_{0}=1 ; l_{5}=\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{0.1} ; l_{10}=\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{0.1} ; \ldots ; \\
l_{5 i}=\left(\frac{1}{i+1}\right)^{0.1} ; \ldots ; l_{100}=0 .
\end{gathered}
$$

Find $\dot{e}_{60}$, assuming a straight line between the given values of $l_{x}$, and check your answer by integration of the curve

$$
l(x)=\left(\frac{1}{x / 5+1}\right)^{0.1}
$$

What is $\dot{e}_{0}$ on this life table? What is $\mu(x)$ ? What is ${ }_{5} q_{x}$ ?
68. On the life table with $l(x)=(100-x) / 190,5 \leq x \leq 100$, work out
(a) the chance that a child who has reached age 5 will live to 60 ,
(b) the chance that a man of 30 lives to age 80 ,
(c) the probability of dying within five years for a man aged 40 , i.e., ${ }_{5} q_{40}$,
(d) the average age at death of those dying between ages 40 and 45 ,
(e) the instantaneous death rate at age 40 , i.e., $\mu_{40}$,
(f) the expectation of life at age 40 ,
(g) the chance that of three men aged 30 at least one survives to age 80 .
69. If $l(x)=\sqrt{1-x / 100}$, what is: (a) $\mu(x)$; (b) $\dot{e}_{0}$ ?
70. Prove that

$$
\begin{array}{r}
\int_{0}^{\omega-x} l(x+t) \mu(x+t) d t=l_{x} \\
\int_{0}^{\omega-x} t l(x+t) \mu(x+t) d t=\int_{0}^{\omega-x} l(x+t) d t=l_{x} e_{x} .
\end{array}
$$

71. The following table contains four typographical errors, each of a single digit. What are they?

|  | $\boldsymbol{l}_{x}$ | ${ }_{5} d_{x}$ | ${ }_{5} q_{x}$ | ${ }_{5} L_{x}$ | $T_{x}$ | $\boldsymbol{e}_{x}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 20 | 95,722 | 857 | 0.008953 | 476,495 | $4,922,814$ | 51.533 |
| 25 | 94,265 | 699 | 0.007368 | 472,566 | $4,456,319$ | 47.975 |
| 30 | 94,166 | 800 | 0.008496 | 468,895 | $3,983,754$ | 42.306 |

### 2.2.5. Laws of Gompertz, Makeham, and Weibull

72. A mortality table that follows Gompertz's Law is found to have inadequate mortality rates. It is proposed to construct a new table following Makeham's Law with the same values of $B$ and $c$. Find an approximation for the difference between the old and the new mortality probabilities in terms of the force of mortality and the constant $A$. (Society of Actuaries.)
73. Show that the Weibull distribution of death rates

$$
\mu(a)=\frac{\beta}{\theta}\left(\frac{a}{\theta}\right)^{\beta-1}
$$

is equivalent to the survival function

$$
l(a)=\exp \left[-\left(\frac{a}{\theta}\right)^{\beta}\right]
$$

Given the age-specific rates for United States males, 1967:

| $\boldsymbol{x}$ | ${ }_{5} M_{x}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| 30 | 0.00220, | say equal to $\mu(32.5)$ |
| 60 | 0.02805, | say equal to $\mu(62.5)$ |

find $\beta, \theta$, and hence $l(90)$.
74. Assuming a mortality table under which the force of mortality consists of three elements-one a constant, another increasing in arithmetical progression throughout life, and the third increasing in geometrical progression throughout life, find expressions for $l_{x}$ and $l_{x+n} / l_{x}$. (Society of Actuaries.)
75. If $\mu(x)=A+B c^{x}$, find an expression for $d \dot{e}_{x} / d A$ which does not con$\operatorname{tain} A, B$, or $c$. (Society of Actuaries.)

### 2.3. Solutions

1. For Indiana, $46,750 / 6,000,000=0.0078$.

For Muncie, $567 / 71,500=0.0079$.
2. For Indiana,

$$
\begin{array}{llll}
{ }_{1} m_{0}=0.0075, & { }_{4} m_{1}=0.0075, & { }_{15} m_{5}=0.0080, & { }_{80} m_{20}=0.0078 ; \\
{ }_{1} m_{0}^{m}=0.0080, & { }_{4} m_{1}^{m}=0.0080, & { }_{15} m_{5}^{m}=0.0087, & { }_{80} m_{20}^{m}=0.0080 ; \\
{ }_{1} m_{0}^{\mathrm{f}}=0.0070, & { }_{4} m_{1}^{\mathrm{f}}=0.0070, & { }_{15} m_{5}^{\mathrm{f}}=0.0073, & { }_{80} m_{20}^{\mathrm{f}}=0.0076 .
\end{array}
$$

For Muncie,

$$
\begin{array}{llll}
{ }_{1} m_{0}=0.0080, & { }_{4} m_{1}=0.0075, & { }_{15} m_{5}=0.0080, & { }_{80} m_{20}=0.0080 ; \\
m_{0}^{m} m_{0}^{m}=0.0080, & { }_{4} m_{1}^{m}=0.0080, & { }_{15} m_{5}^{m}=0.0085, & { }^{m} m_{20}^{\mathrm{m}}=0.0118 ; \\
{ }_{1} m_{0}^{\mathrm{f}}=0.0080, & { }_{4} m_{1}^{\mathrm{f}}=0.0070, & { }_{15} m_{5}^{\mathrm{f}}=0.0075, & { }_{80} m_{20}^{\mathrm{f}}=0.0056 .
\end{array}
$$

3. 

$$
\frac{\sum_{x} P_{x}^{s} \cdot m_{x}}{\sum_{x} P_{x}^{s}}=\frac{800+3000+12,000+32,000}{6,000,000}=0.0092 .
$$

4. 

$$
\frac{D}{\sum_{x}{ }_{n} m_{x}^{s} \cdot{ }_{n} P_{x}}(0.0078)=\frac{567}{559.45}(0.0078)=0.0079
$$

5. 

$$
\frac{\sum_{x}\left({ }^{m} P_{x}^{s} \cdot{ }^{m} m_{x}+{ }^{s} P_{x}^{s} \cdot{ }^{s} m_{x}\right)}{6,000,000}=0.0079 .
$$

6. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Var}(M) & =\sum_{x}\left(\frac{P_{x}}{P}\right)^{2} \operatorname{Var}\left(M_{x}\right) \\
& =\sum_{x}\left(\frac{P_{x}}{P}\right)^{2} \operatorname{Var} \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{P_{x}} X_{i}}{P_{x}},
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\left\{X_{i}\right\}$ are independent, each with distribution $P\left(X_{i}=1\right)=M_{x}$, $\mathrm{P}\left(X_{i}=0\right)=1-M_{x}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =\sum_{x}\left(\frac{P_{x}}{P}\right)^{2} \frac{M_{x}\left(1-M_{x}\right)}{P_{x}} \\
& =\sum_{x} \frac{D_{x}\left(1-M_{x}\right)}{P^{2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

16. $q_{x}^{z}=D_{x}^{z} /\left[0.5\left(P_{x}^{z}+P_{x}^{z+1}+D_{x}^{z}\right)\right]$,
$m_{x}^{z}=D_{x}^{z} / P_{x}^{z+1 / 2}$,
$q_{x}^{2}=m_{x}^{2} /\left(1+\frac{1}{2} m_{x}^{2}\right)$. Yes, the exposed to risk in $q_{x}^{2}$ is larger than in $m_{x}^{2}$.
17. 

| $x$ | ${ } q_{x}$ | $l_{x}$ | ${ }^{5} d_{x}$ | ${ }^{5} L_{x}$ | ${ }^{5} m_{x}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 20 | 0.006338 | 94,864 | 601 | $472,817.5$ | 0.001271 |
| 25 | 0.006650 | 94,263 | 627 | $469,747.5$ | 0.001335 |
| 30 | 0.008087 | 93,636 | 757 | $466,287.5$ | 0.001623 |
| 35 |  | 92,879 |  |  |  |


| $x$ | $T_{x}$ | $e_{x}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 20 | $5,024,927$ | 52.97 |
| 25 | $4,552,109.5$ | 48.29 |
| 30 | $4,082,362$ | 43.60 |
| 35 | $3,616,074.5$ | 38.93 |

19. 0.99 .
20. 

$$
\dot{e}_{x}=\frac{T_{x}}{l_{x}}=\frac{s L_{x}+T_{x+5}}{l_{x}}=\frac{s L_{x}}{l_{x}}+\frac{l_{x+5}}{l_{x}} e_{x+5} .
$$

The complete expectation of life at age $x$ is the average years lived between $x$ and $x+5$ plus the complete expectation of life beyond age $x+5$ to those who live to $x+5$.
21.

$$
\bar{x}_{D}=\int_{0}^{\omega} \frac{t l_{t} \mu_{t} d t}{l_{0}} .
$$

After integration by parts,

$$
\bar{x}_{\mathrm{D}}=\int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{l_{t}}{l_{0}} d t=\dot{e}_{0} .
$$

22. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
l_{x+t} & =E_{5}^{t / 5} l_{x}=\left(1+\frac{\Delta}{5}\right)^{t / 5} l_{x} \\
& =\left\{l_{x}+\frac{t}{5} \Delta l_{5}+\frac{t(t-5)}{2!5^{2}} \Delta_{5}^{2} l_{x}+\frac{t(t-5)(t-10)}{3!5^{3}} \Delta_{5}^{3} l_{x-5}+\cdots\right\} \\
{ }_{5} L_{x} & =\int_{0}^{5} l(x+t) d t \\
& \fallingdotseq 5 l_{x}+\frac{25}{10} \Delta l_{5}-\frac{5}{12} \Delta_{5}^{2} l_{x}+\frac{5}{24} \Delta_{5}^{3} l_{x-5} \\
& =\frac{-5}{24} l_{x-5}+\frac{65}{24} l_{x}+\frac{65}{24} l_{x+5}-\frac{5}{24} l_{x+10}
\end{aligned}
$$

23. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
d_{x} & =\int_{0}^{1} l(x+t) \mu(x+t) d t \\
& =\int_{0}^{1}(-1) d l(x+t) \\
& =l_{x}-l_{x+1}
\end{aligned}
$$

after integration by parts.
24. Both equal $-5 b$. (Clearly, $b<0$.)
25. Proof 1.

$$
\begin{aligned}
{ }_{t} p_{x} & =1-t\left(q_{x}\right) \\
\frac{d}{d t}\left({ }_{t} p_{x}\right) & =-q_{x}=-{ }_{t} p_{x} \mu_{x+t} \\
\mu_{x+t} & =\frac{q_{x}}{{ }_{t} p_{x}}=\frac{q_{x}}{1-t q_{x}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof 2.

$$
\begin{aligned}
q_{x} & =1-\exp \left(-\int_{0}^{t} \mu_{x+z} d z\right) \\
-\int_{0}^{t} \mu_{x+z} d z & =\ln _{e}\left(1-t q_{x}\right) \\
\mu_{x+t} & =\frac{q_{x}}{1-t q_{x}}
\end{aligned}
$$

27. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
{ }_{1-s} q_{x+t} & =\frac{l_{x+t}-l_{x+t+1-s}}{l_{x+t}} \\
& =\frac{l_{x}-t d_{x}-l_{x}+(1-s+t) d_{x}}{l_{x}-t d_{x}} \\
& =\frac{(1-s) q_{x}}{1-t q_{x}} \\
& =(1-s) \mu_{x+t} .
\end{aligned}
$$

28. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
1-t q_{x+t} & =1-\exp \left(-\int_{t}^{1} \mu_{x+z} d z\right), \\
-\int_{t}^{1} \mu_{x+z} d z & =\ln _{e}\left[1-(1-t) q_{x}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Differentiate both sides $w / r / t t$.

$$
\mu_{x+t}=\frac{q_{x}}{1-(1-t) q_{x}} .
$$

31. (a) ${ }_{r} q_{x}=1-\exp \left(-\int_{0}^{t} \mu_{x+z} d z\right)$

$$
=1-e^{-\mu t} .
$$

32. (a) $p_{x}=e^{-\mu}=\left(e^{-\mu t}\right)^{1 / t}=\left({ }_{t} p_{x}\right)^{1 / t}$.
(b) 0.8 and 0.9283 .
33. Let $\mu_{y}^{i}=$ force of mortality from cause $i$. Assume $\mu_{y}^{i} / \mu_{y}=A$ for $x<y<x+n$.

$$
{ }_{n} p_{x}=\exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{n} \mu_{x+t} d t\right\} \text { and } \log _{n} p_{x}=-\int_{0}^{n} \mu_{x+t} d t .
$$

Likewise,

$$
\log _{n} p_{x}^{(-i)}=-\int_{0}^{n} \mu_{x+t}^{(-i)} d t
$$

By definition,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{0}^{n} \mu_{x+t}^{(-i)} d t & =\int_{0}^{n}\left\{\mu_{x+t}-\mu_{x+t}^{i}\right\} d t \\
& =(1-A) \int_{0}^{n} \mu_{x+t} d t \\
& =(1-A)(-1) \log _{n} p_{x} .
\end{aligned}
$$

So

$$
\log _{n} p_{x}^{(-i)}=(1-A) \log _{n} p_{x}
$$

To show that $A={ }_{n} r_{x}^{i}$,

$$
{ }_{n} r_{x}^{i}=\frac{{ }_{n} d_{x}^{i}}{{ }_{n} d_{x}}=\frac{\int_{0}^{n} l_{x+t} \mu_{x+t}^{i} d t}{\int_{0}^{n} l_{x+t} \mu_{x+t} d t}=A .
$$

Thus

$$
\log _{n} p_{x}^{(-i)}=\log \left({ }_{n} p_{x}\right)^{\left(1-n r_{x}^{( }\right)} \quad \text { and } \quad{ }_{n} p_{x}^{(-i)}={ }_{n} p_{x}^{\left(1-n n_{x}^{\prime}\right)} \text {. }
$$

37. 

$$
p_{x+1 / 2}=\frac{P_{x+1}^{z}}{P_{x}^{z-1}}=\frac{P_{x+1}^{z}}{P_{x}^{z} /(1+r)} .
$$

Interpolate to get $p$ 's at integral ages. After choosing $l_{0}, l_{x}^{\prime}=l_{0} p_{x}, d_{x}=$ $l_{x}-l_{x+1}, q_{x}=1-p_{x}$ for $x=1,2, \ldots$.
38. Those who do not die from the $i$ th cause would be subject to all other causes for half a year on the average:

$$
q_{x}^{(-i)}=\frac{d_{x}-d_{x}^{i}+\left(\frac{1}{2} d_{x}^{i}\right) q_{x}^{(-i)}}{l_{x}}
$$

Thus

$$
q_{x}^{(-i)}=\frac{d_{x}-d_{x}^{i}}{l_{x}-\frac{1}{2} d_{x}^{i}} \text { and } p_{x}^{(-i)}=1-q_{x}^{(-i)}=\frac{l_{x+1}+\frac{1}{2}\left(d_{x}^{i}\right)}{l_{x}-\frac{1}{2}\left(d_{x}^{i}\right)}
$$

39. 


41. Start at the highest age where $q_{x}<1$.

$$
\tilde{e}_{x}=1-q_{x}+f_{x}
$$

where $f_{x}$ is the expected fraction of the year of age from $x$ to $x+1$ of those who die before their $(x+1)$ st birthday.

Move backwards with age.

$$
\dot{e}_{x}=\left(1-q_{x}\right)\left(e_{x+1}+1\right)+f_{x} q_{x} .
$$

This step is justified by the addition law for probabilities.
42. Assume that the observed rates ${ }_{5} M_{x}$ equal the life table rates ${ }_{5} m_{x}$. Also assume that $l_{x}$ is linear in each 5 -year age group. By Problem 36, ${ }_{5} q_{55}=$ $0.08731,{ }_{5} q_{50}=0.05792$, and ${ }_{5} q_{60}=0.13102$. The last two values attest to the reasonableness of ${ }_{5} q_{5 s}$ 's value.
43. Assume that $l(y)=A+B y+C y^{2}$, for $x-5 \leq y \leq x+5$. Then

$$
\mu(y)=-\frac{1}{l(y)} \frac{d l(y)}{d y}=-\frac{B+2 C y}{l(y)} .
$$

By manipulating $l(x-5), l(x)$, and $l(x+5)$ one can obtain

$$
2 C=\frac{l(x+5)-2 l(x)+l(x-5)}{25}
$$

and

$$
B=\frac{l(x)-l(x-5)}{5}-(2 x-5)\left[\frac{l(x+5)-2 l(x)+l(x-5)}{50}\right],
$$

$\mu_{y}=\frac{1}{l(y)}\left[\frac{l(x-5)-l(x)}{5}+\frac{l(x+5)-2 l(x)+l(x-5)}{50}\{2 x-2 y-5\}\right]$.
When $y=x$, the above becomes $\mu_{x}=\left(1 / l_{x}\right)\left[0.1 l_{x-5}-0.1 l_{x+5}\right]$.
44. One needs $d^{2} l(x) / d x^{2}<0$ for $l(x)$ to be concave downward. Since

$$
\frac{d^{2} l(x)}{d x^{2}}=l(x)\left[\mu^{2}(x)-\frac{d \mu(x)}{d x}\right],
$$

this is equivalent to requiring $d \mu(x) / d x>\mu^{2}(x)$.
45.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{0}^{n} \mu(x+t) d t & =-\ln \left(\frac{l_{x+n}}{l_{x}}\right) \\
& =-\ln (1-q) \\
& =q+\frac{q^{2}}{2}+\frac{q^{3}}{3}+\cdots
\end{aligned}
$$

If $l(x)$ is linear between ages $x$ and $x+n$,

$$
{ }_{n} q_{x}=\frac{n\left({ }_{n} m_{x}\right)}{1+(n / 2)\left({ }_{r} m_{x}\right)} .
$$

Solve this for $n\left({ }_{n} m_{x}\right)$ to obtain ${ }_{n} q_{x} /\left[1-\frac{1}{2}\left(q_{n}\right)\right]$. The denominator can be expressed as a series, and

$$
{ }_{n} m_{x}=\frac{1}{n}\left(q+\frac{q^{2}}{2}+\frac{q^{3}}{4}+\cdots\right) .
$$

Therefore,

$$
{ }_{n} m_{x}<\frac{1}{n} \int_{0}^{n} \mu(x+t) d t=\bar{\mu},
$$

and

$$
\exp \left\{-n\left({ }_{n} m_{x}\right)\right\}>\exp \{-n \bar{\mu}\} .
$$

Hence,

$$
\exp \left\{-n\left(n_{n}\right)\right\}>\frac{l_{x+n}}{l_{x}}
$$

46. (a) With rare exceptions,

$$
l_{x}>\int_{0}^{1} l(x+t) d t>l_{x+1}
$$

Hence,

$$
\frac{d_{x}}{l_{x}}<\frac{d_{x}}{\int_{0}^{1} l(x+t) d t}<\frac{d_{x}}{l_{x+1}},
$$

or

$$
q_{x}<m_{x}<\frac{q_{x}}{1-q_{x}} .
$$

(b) The inequality $m_{x}<q_{x} /\left(1-q_{x}\right)$, and routine algebra yield $m_{x} /\left(1+m_{x}\right)$
$<q_{x}$. The second part was proved in part (a).
47. Let $U=l(x+t)$ and $d V=d t$ in ${ }_{n} L_{x}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{0}^{n} l(x+t) d t & =\left.t l(x+t)\right|_{0} ^{n}-\int_{0}^{n} t d l(x+t) \\
& =n l_{x+n}+{ }_{n} a_{x}\left(l_{x}-l_{x+n}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
{ }_{n} a_{x}=\frac{\int_{0}^{n} t l(x+t) \mu(x+t) d t}{l_{x}-l_{x+n}} .
$$

The aggregate number of years lived between ages $x$ and $x+n$ by the $l_{x}$ starters is ${ }_{n} L_{x}$. This aggregate number is also equal to $n$ times the $l_{x+n}$ enders plus ${ }_{n} a_{x}$ times those who died between ages $x$ and $x+n$.
48. $L_{x}=\left(l_{x}-l_{x+1}\right) / m_{x}$. Hence,

$$
a_{x}\left(l_{x}-l_{x+1}\right)=\frac{l_{x}-l_{x+1}}{m_{x}}-l_{x+1},
$$

or

$$
l_{x+1}=\frac{l_{x}\left(1-m_{x} a_{x}\right)}{1+m_{x}\left(1-a_{x}\right)} .
$$

49. From Solution 47 and 48,

$$
l_{x+n}=\frac{l_{x}\left[1-{ }_{n} m_{x} \cdot{ }_{n} a_{x}\right]}{1+n\left({ }_{n} m_{x}\right)-{ }_{n} m_{x}\left({ }_{n} a_{x}\right)} .
$$

With the given data,

$$
{ }_{5} p_{40}=\frac{0.9884}{1.0100}=0.9786 .
$$

50. Let $\hat{l}_{x},{ }_{5} \hat{q}_{x},{ }_{5} \hat{L}_{x}$, and $\hat{e}_{x}$ be the modified functions. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \hat{l}_{x}=e^{-0.001 x} l_{x}, \\
&{ }_{s} \hat{q}_{x}=\left(1-e^{-0.005}\right)+e^{-0.005}{ }_{s} q_{x} \\
& \fallingdotseq 0.005+0.995\left({ }_{s} q_{x}\right), \\
&{ }_{s} \hat{L}_{x}=\int_{0}^{5} e^{-0.001(x+t)}(x+t) d t,
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\hat{e}_{x}=\frac{1}{l_{x}} \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-0.001 t} l(x+t) d t
$$

51. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
\hat{l}_{x} & =l_{0} e^{-1.001 \int \delta \mu_{y} d y}\left(=\left(l_{x}\right)^{1.001} \text { if } l_{0}=1\right), \\
s \hat{q}_{x} & =1-{ }_{s} \hat{p}_{x}=1-\left({ }_{s} p_{x}\right)^{1.001}, \\
{ }_{5} \hat{L}_{x} & =l_{x} \int_{0}^{s} e^{-1.001 \iint_{x}^{+}+\epsilon_{y} d y} d t, \\
\hat{e}_{x} & =\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-1.001 \iint_{x}+c_{\mu y} d y} d t .
\end{aligned}
$$

52. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
{ }_{25} p_{0} & =\exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{25} \mu(t) d t\right\}=0.89, \\
{ }_{25} \hat{p}_{0} & =\exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{25}[\mu(t)-0.0001] d t\right\} \\
& =e^{0.0025}(0.89)=0.89223 .
\end{aligned}
$$

53. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
{ }_{n} \dot{q}_{x} & =1-\exp \left\{-k \int_{0}^{n} \mu(x+t) d t\right\} \\
& =1-\left[{ }_{n} p_{x}\right]^{k} \\
& =1-\left[1-{ }_{n} q_{x}\right]^{k} \\
& \fallingdotseq k\left({ }_{n} q_{x}\right)-\frac{k(k-1)}{2}\left({ }_{n} q_{x}\right)^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

54. ${ }_{50} p_{0}=p_{0} p_{1} p_{2} \cdots p_{34} p_{35} p_{36} \cdots p_{49}$. New $\hat{q}_{35}=q_{35}-0.0001$, or $\hat{p}_{35}$ $=p_{35}+0.0001$. Hence

$$
{ }_{50} \hat{p}_{0}={ }_{50} p_{0}+0.0001 \frac{l_{35}}{l_{0}} \cdot \frac{l_{50}}{l_{36}}
$$

The same drop at age 55 would have no effect on ${ }_{50} p_{0}$.
55.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\grave{e}_{0} & =\int_{0}^{\omega} l(t) d t / l(0) \\
& =\left\{\int_{0}^{30} l(t) d t+\int_{30}^{35} l(t) d t+\int_{35}^{\omega} l(t) d t\right\} / l(0) .
\end{aligned}
$$

With the change in forces of mortality,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{30}^{35} l(t) d t & =\int_{30}^{35} l(0) \exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{t}[\mu(y)-0.001] d y\right\} d t \\
& =\int_{30}^{35} l(0) e^{0.001 t} \exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{t} \mu(y) d y\right\} d t \\
& \fallingdotseq e^{0.001(32.5)} \int_{30}^{35} l(0) \exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{t} \mu(y) d y\right\} d t
\end{aligned}
$$

by an approximation suggested by a Mean Value Theorem for Integrals

$$
=1.033 \int_{30}^{35} l(t) d t
$$

Thus the new expectation of life equals the old value, increased by

$$
0.033\left({ }_{5} L_{30}\right) / l(0)
$$

56. $\dot{e}_{0} \fallingdotseq e_{0}+\frac{1}{2}$.

$$
e_{0}=p_{0}+p_{0} e_{1}=\left(1-d_{0}\right)\left(1+e_{1}\right) \text { since } l_{0}=1 \text {. Therefore, an error }
$$ of 0.00001 in $d_{0}$ affects $\dot{e}_{0}$ by $\pm 0.00001\left(1+e_{1}\right)$.

57. Under the old conditions, $e_{0}=p_{0}\left(1+e_{1}\right)=69.5$, or $1+e_{1}=$ $69.5 / p_{0}$. The old probability $q_{0}=0.020+x$ for some $x$. The old and new $e_{0}$ values are

$$
e_{0}=(1-0.020-x)\left(1+e_{1}\right)
$$

and

$$
e_{0}=(1-x)\left(1+e_{1}\right)
$$

Thus $\dot{e}_{0}$ rises by $0.020\left[(69.5) / p_{0}\right]$.
58. $80,000=100,000 e^{-0.02 n} \Rightarrow n \fallingdotseq 11$.
59.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\stackrel{\circ}{e}_{30: 25} & =\int_{0}^{\infty}{ }_{t} p_{30: 25} d t \\
& =\int_{0}^{\infty}{ }_{t} p_{30} \cdot{ }_{t} p_{25} d t
\end{aligned}
$$

If $\mu_{x}$ is constant and equal to 0.02 ,

$$
\grave{e}_{30: 25}=\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-0.02 t} e^{-0.02 t} d t=25 \text { years. }
$$

60. (a)

$$
\begin{aligned}
\stackrel{\grave{e}}{x} & =\frac{1}{l_{x}} \int_{0}^{\infty} l(x+t) d t \\
& =\int_{0}^{\infty} \exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{t} \mu(x+w) d w\right\} d t \\
& =\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-\mu t} d t=\frac{1}{\mu}
\end{aligned}
$$

(b) The new expectation of life $=1 / \mu(1-\delta)$. Since $1 /(1-\delta) \fallingdotseq 1+\delta$, the new expectation $\hat{\hat{e}}_{x} \fallingdotseq(1+\delta) \stackrel{e}{e}_{x}$.
(c)

$$
\begin{aligned}
\stackrel{\grave{e}}{x} & =\int_{0}^{\infty} \exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{t} \mu(x+w) d w\right\} d t \\
& <\int_{0}^{\infty} \exp \{-t \mu(x)\} d t \\
& =\frac{1}{\mu(x)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Replacing $\mu(x+w)$ by $(1-\delta) \mu(x+w)$ for $w \geq 0$ yields a new upper bound of $1 /(1-\delta) \mu(x)$, or approximately $(1+\delta)[1 / \mu(x)]$ for small $\delta$.
61.

$$
\begin{aligned}
{ }_{n} q_{x} & =1-{ }_{n} p_{x} \\
& =1-\exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{n} \mu(x+t) d t\right\} \\
& =1-\exp \left\{-n\left({ }_{n} M_{x}\right)-0.008 n^{3}\left({ }_{n} M_{x}^{2}\right)\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

62. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{l_{x+1}}{l_{x}} & =\exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{1} \mu(x+t) d t\right\} \\
& =\exp \left\{-M_{x}\right\} . \\
1-t q_{x+t} & =\frac{l(x+t)-l(x+1)}{l(x+t)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

When

$$
{ }_{1-t} q_{x+t}=(1-t) q_{x}
$$

then

$$
1-\frac{l(x+1)}{l(x+t)}=(1-t)-(1-t) \frac{l(x+1)}{l(x)}
$$

or

$$
\frac{1}{l(x+t)}=\frac{t}{l(x+1)}+\frac{1-t}{l(x)} .
$$

The constant force assumption yields an exponential curve.

$$
l(x+t)=l(x) \exp \left\{-t M_{x}\right\}, \quad 0 \leq t \leq 1 .
$$

The Balducci assumption yields part of a hyperbola for $l(x+t)$ :

$$
l(x+t)=\frac{l(x) \cdot l(x+1)}{l(x+1)+t d(x)}, \quad 0 \leq t \leq 1 .
$$

63. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
{ }_{30} p_{40} & =\exp \left(-\int_{0}^{30} \mu_{40+t} d t\right) \\
& =\exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{30}(0.01+0.002 t) d t\right\} \\
& \fallingdotseq 0.3012
\end{aligned}
$$

64. By Problem 31, $q_{x}=.1-e^{-k}$. For part (i), the error equals

$$
1-e^{-k}-\frac{k}{1+0.5 k}
$$

and when $k=0.01$, the numerical error is -0.00000008 . For part (ii), the approximate expression equals

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{2}\left\{q_{x-1} \frac{l_{x-1}}{l_{x}}+q_{x}\right\} & =\frac{1}{2}\left\{\left(1-e^{-k}\right) e^{k}+\left(1-e^{-k}\right)\right\} \\
& =\frac{1}{2}\left(e^{k}-e^{-k}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

The error $=k-\frac{1}{2}\left(e^{k}-e^{-k}\right)$, and when $k=0.01$, the numerical error is -0.00000017 .

If $\mu_{x}=1 /(A-x)$, then $p_{x}=1-1 /(A-x)$, and $q_{x}=1 /(A-x)$. Thus,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{2 \mu_{x+1 / 2}}{2+\mu_{x+1 / 2}} & =\frac{1}{A-x}=q_{x} . \\
l_{x} & =l_{0} \exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{x} \mu(t) d t\right\} \\
& =l_{0}(1-x / A) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence

$$
d_{x}=\frac{l_{0}}{A} \text { and } d_{x-1}=\frac{l_{0}}{A} .
$$

Therefore,

$$
\frac{d_{x-1}+d_{x}}{2 l_{x}}=\frac{1}{A-x}=\mu_{x} .
$$

65. The last person dies at age 110 (last birthday).
$\dot{\varepsilon}_{0}=\int_{0}^{110} l(x) d x$, since $l(0)=1$. Thus $\dot{e}_{0}=46.98$.
The mean age of death $=\frac{\int_{0}^{10} t l(t) \mu(t) d t}{\int_{0}^{10} l(t) \mu(t) d t}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =\frac{\int_{0}^{110} t[-d l(t)]}{\int_{0}^{110}(-1) d l(t)} \\
& =46.98
\end{aligned}
$$

The mean age of the living $=\frac{\int_{0}^{110} t l(t) d t}{\int_{0}^{100} l(t) d t}=\frac{1613.46}{46.98}=34.34$.
The function $d(x)=l(x)-l(x+1)$ has a derivative of

$$
-0.01\left\{e^{-0.02 x}-e^{-0.02(x+1)}\right\} .
$$

Therefore, the number of deaths is maximal at age 0 , where $d(0)=0.0149$.
66.

$$
\begin{gathered}
l_{x}=l_{6}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{(x-6) / 10}, \quad 6<x<66 \\
\left(\frac{l_{26}}{l_{6}}\right)^{3}+\binom{3}{2}\left(\frac{l_{26}}{l_{6}}\right)^{2}\left(1-\frac{l_{26}}{l_{6}}\right)=\frac{5}{32}
\end{gathered}
$$

67. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
\dot{e}_{60} & =\frac{1}{l_{60}} \int_{60}^{100} l(x) d x \\
& =\frac{5}{l_{60}}\left[\frac{l_{60}+l_{65}}{2}\right]+\frac{5}{l_{60}}\left[\frac{l_{65}+l_{70}}{2}\right]+\cdots+\frac{5}{l_{60}}\left[\frac{l_{95}+l_{100}}{2}\right] \\
& =36.6 \text { years. }
\end{aligned}
$$

As a check, $\int_{60}^{95}(0.2 x+1)^{-0.1} d x=26.466$ and $5\left[\left(l_{95}+l_{100}\right) / 2\right]=1.853$, and thus $\left(1 / l_{60}\right)[26.466+1.853]=36.6$ years.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\AA_{0} & =\frac{1}{l_{0}} \int_{0}^{95}(0.2 x+1)^{-0.1} d x+1.853=78.6 \text { years, } \\
\mu_{x} & =0.02(0.2 x+1)^{-1} \\
{ }_{s} q_{x} & =1-\exp \left\{-0.02 \int_{0}^{5} \frac{d t}{0.2(x+t)+1}\right\} \\
& =1-\exp \left\{-0.1 \ln \left(\frac{0.2 x+2}{0.2 x+1}\right)\right\} \\
& =1-\left(\frac{0.2 x+1}{0.2 x+2}\right)^{0.1}
\end{aligned}
$$

68. (a) 0.421 . (b) 0.286 . (c) 0.083 .
(d) $\int_{0}^{s} \frac{t l(40+t) \mu(40+t) d t}{l(40)-l(45)}=2.5$. Hence, the avcrage age at death is 42.5 .
(e) $1 / 60$. (f) $\dot{e}_{40}=30$.
(g) $P$ [at least one survives] $=1-P$ [all die]

$$
=1-\left[\frac{l_{30}-l_{80}}{l_{30}}\right]^{3} \fallingdotseq 0.64
$$

69. (a)

$$
\mu_{x}=\frac{1}{200} \cdot \frac{1}{(1-x / 100)} .
$$

(b)

$$
\dot{e}_{0}=\int_{0}^{100}\left(1-\frac{x}{100}\right)^{1 / 2} d x=66.67 \text { years. }
$$

70. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \int_{0}^{\omega-x} l(x+t) \mu(x+t) d t=-\int_{0}^{\omega-x} d l(x+t)=l_{x} . \\
& \int_{0}^{\omega-x} t l(x+t) \mu(x+t) d t=-\left.t l(x+t)\right|_{0} ^{\omega-x}+\int_{0}^{\omega-x} l(x+t) d t
\end{aligned}
$$

by integration by parts,

$$
=l_{x} \dot{e}_{x}
$$

71. The corrected typographical errors are underlined as follows: $T_{20}=$ $4932814, l_{25}=94 \underline{8} 65, \dot{e}_{25}=46.975$, and $T_{30}=3,983,75 \underline{3}$.
72. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
q_{x}^{\text {New }}-q_{x}^{\text {Old }} & =\exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{1} B c^{x+t} d t\right\}-\exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{1}\left[A+B c^{x+t}\right] d t\right\} \\
& =\left(1-e^{-A}\right) \exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{1} \mu_{x+t}^{\text {Old }} d t\right\} \\
& \fallingdotseq A \exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{1} \mu_{x+t}^{\text {Old }} d t\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

73. Assume that $l(0)=1$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
l(a) & =\exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{a} \mu(x) d x\right\} \\
& =\exp \left[-\left(\frac{a}{\theta}\right)^{\beta}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

The assumptions $\mu(32.5)=\left(\beta / \theta^{\beta}\right)(32.5)^{\beta-1}$ and $\mu(62.5)=\left(\beta / \theta^{\beta}\right)(62.5)^{\beta-1}$ yield $\beta=4.89269$. Further calculations produce $\theta=77.08719$. Hence, $l(90)=0.11843$.
74. Assume that $\mu_{x}=A+B x+c^{x}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
l_{x} & =l_{0} \exp \left\{-\int_{0}^{x}\left(A+B t+c^{l}\right) d t\right\} \\
& =l_{0} \exp \left\{-\left(A x+\frac{B}{2} x^{2}+\frac{c^{x}-1}{\ln _{e} c}\right)\right\} . \\
\frac{l_{x+n}}{l_{x}} & =\exp \left\{-\left(A n+B x n+\frac{B}{2} n^{2}+\frac{c^{x}\left(c^{n}-1\right)}{\ln _{e} c}\right)\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

75. We prove a more general proposition, applying to any additive constant in the force of mortality, which we may call $\mu(x)=A+\mu^{*}(x)$. The derivative of $l(x+t) / l(x)$ is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d l(x+t) / l(x)}{d A} & =\frac{d \exp \left(-\int_{0}^{t}\left(A+\mu^{*}(x+s)\right) d s\right.}{d A} \\
& =\frac{d}{d A} e^{-A t} \exp \left(-\int_{0}^{t} \mu^{*}(x+s) d s\right. \\
& =-t l(x+t) / l(x) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence using the fact that the derivative of an integral is the integral of the derivative for our integrand, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d e ̀(x)}{d A} & =\frac{d \int_{0}^{\omega-x} l(x+t) / l(x) d t}{d A} \\
& =\int_{0}^{\omega-x} \frac{d l(x+t) / l(x) d t}{d A}=-\int_{0}^{\omega} \frac{t l(x+t) d t}{l(x)}
\end{aligned}
$$

This does not involve the constants of the Makeham or any other graduation.

## CHAPTER III

## Uses of Stable Theory

The problems of this chapter require no more apparatus than the stable age distribution expressed in terms of the birth rate $b$, the rate of increase $r$, and the probability $l(x)$ of surviving from birth to age $x$. If these quantities are fixed over time the fraction of the population between age $x$ and $x+d x$ is $b e^{-r x} l(x) d x$, a proposition due to Euler (1760). The population is supposed closed to migration.

From this expression we can show how any of the rates of birth and death affect the age distribution. For example, the quantity be $e^{-r x}(x)$ or its integral over any range of ages can be differentiated with respect to any of the age-specific rates and the effect of a small change in any rate calculated. As between two countries, or two points of time in the same country, we can permute the births and deaths and find what part of the difference in age distribution is due to births and what part to deaths. The expression can be converted into a form that shows explicitly the moments of the distribution of ages. Doing this permits expressing the fraction of the population in any age interval in terms of the moments of the distribution as a whole and of the part of the distribution in that interval. The sensitivity of the fraction in any age interval to the several moments is thus immediately available.

From this theory one can go on to the inverse problem: inferring the rate of increase and other features from a knowledge of the fraction in an age interval, plus some assumptions regarding the moments.

The identical theory can be applied to a sub-population, for instance the women bearing children in a particular year, the labor-force, children at school. All that is needed is an additional factor, say $m(x)$, to stand for what may be called participation rates. Thus if $m(x)$ is the age-specific birth rate, the fraction of the births between ages $x$ and $x+d x$ is $b e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x$.

This quantity integrated over all ages of positive fertility is $\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} b e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x$, where $\alpha$ is the lowest and $\beta$ the highest age of positive fertility. And this total must give the births per unit of population, so we can equate it to $b$ and obtain the characteristic equation in the unknown $r$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} b e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x=b \text { or } \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x=1 . \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

The integrals expressed in terms of their moments enable us to say what is the effect on the intrinsic rate $r$ of variations in the moments of $l(x) m(x)$, known as the net maternity function. Such an argument leads to Chapter IV, on births and stability; the present Chapter III deals only with age distributions related to mortality and natural increase in closed populations.

### 3.1. Problems

1. The number of individuals between ages $x$ and $x+d x$ in a closed stable population is $b e^{-r x} l(x) d x$, where $b$ is the overall birth rate, $r$ is the rate of increase, $l(x)$ is the probability at birth of surviving to age $x$. Give a demonstration in words of this statement.
2. Prove that the constant $b$ in (1) is the reciprocal

$$
b=1 / \int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x
$$

where $\omega$ is the highest age to which anyone lives.
3. Show that an addition to the rate of increase has exactly the same effect on age distribution as an addition of the same amount to all agespecific mortality rates.
4. Express the slope of the curve of a stable age distribution in terms of life table functions and the rate of increase.
5. How fast does $\mu(x)$ have to rise with age for the stable age distribution of given rate of increase $r$ to be concave above at age $x$ ?
6. The crude death rate in the stable population (also referred to as the intrinsic death rate) is

$$
d=\int_{0}^{\omega} b e^{-r x} l(x) \mu(x) d x .
$$

Verify that this is equal to $b-r$.
7. A census has been taken of a population assumed to be stable; the count at age $x$ is $c_{x}$, and that at age $y>x$ is $c_{y}$. Express the rate of increase in terms of $c_{x}, c_{y}$, and the survivorship function $l(x)$.
8. Describe a research project in which one would investigate the accuracy attained by the method used in Problem 7.
9. In a population (that of Mexico 1960) in which the census count at age 25-29 for females was $1,314,000$ and at age $50-54$ was 538,000 , and the number living in the life table for those two ages was 408,000 and 351,000 , find the rate of increase.
10. Censuses are often enumerated incorrectly. Suppose that there is an error of fraction $\delta$ in the number of individuals $c_{x}$ enumerated at age $x$. Find the true rate of increase.
11. In Problem 7 suppose that we use a life table that is appropriate except for the addition to $\mu(x)$ of $\delta$, a random variate of mean zero and variance $\sigma^{2}$. What is the variance of the estimated $\hat{r}$ ?
12. Show that however far from stable an age distribution is, if the population is closed and the life table is known one can calculate exactly the average rate of increase of births over a past time interval.
13. Generalize the result of Problem 12 to the case where one knows the age distribution in arbitrary intervals, for instance, the number of individuals aged $x$ to $x+u,{ }_{u} C_{x}$, and the number aged $y$ to $y+v,{ }_{v} C_{y}$, where $y>x$.
14. You are told nothing but the mean age of an observed population, and the mean age and variance of the life table that it has followed. With this information estimate its rate of increase.
15. If instead of using the proper life table in Problem 7 we had mistakenly used a life table whose force of mortality $\mu(x)$ was too high by 0.0001 at every age, how far would we have been in error?
16. The case where past birth rates have been constant, but mortality has been steadily improving, is known as quasi-stability (Coale 1963). If the improvement in mortality between successive annual cohorts has been $k$ per year in absolute amount, find how to infer the rate of increase knowing the population count and the life table.
17. If the improvement is in the proportion $k$, rather than in the absolute amount $k$ that we took in the preceding question, show how to estimate the rate of increase of the population.
18. In a certain population the ratio of male population aged 35-39 to that $60-64$ was 2.318 , and the corresponding ratio for the life table was 1.249. How fast was the population increasing?
19. Given the following abnormal age distribution for males in Martinique, 19.63 , use the equation of Problem 7 to calculate the rate of increase with all possible combinations of age.

| $\boldsymbol{x}$ | ${ }_{5} C_{x}$ | ${ }_{5} L_{x}$ |
| :--- | ---: | ---: |
| $10-14$ | 19,118 | 467,241 |
| $20-24$ | 9,393 | 461,603 |
| $30-34$ | 8,025 | 451,857 |
| $40-44$ | 7,194 | 431,635 |
| $50-54$ | 5,848 | 389,524 |
| Total-all ages | 149,083 |  |

20. As a special case of Problem 7 consider the ratio of girls under 5 to women 15 to 44 at last birthday, all divided by the corresponding ratio for the life table. Show that the result, known as Thompson's index, is an approximation'sto the net reproduction rate $R_{0}$.
21. Show that a better approximation to $r$ than that of Problem 14 is given by

$$
\bar{x}=\frac{L_{1}}{L_{0}}-\sigma^{2} r+\frac{\kappa_{3} r^{2}}{2},
$$

where $\kappa_{3}$ is the third moment about the mean of the life table, and obtain an iterative method of solving this. Solve with

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{L_{1}}{L_{0}} & =32.75, \\
\sigma^{2} & =465.9, \\
\kappa_{3} & =3585, \\
\bar{x} & =31.39
\end{aligned}
$$

(data from France, 1851, females; Keyfitz and Flieger 1968, p. 313).
22. All the conditions of the stable population are met, but there are errors in enumeration in the $C_{x}$ and $C_{y}$ such that they are independently subject to normal random variation with mean zero and variance $\sigma^{2}$. To what variation will the rate of increase $r$ as calculated by the expression in Problem 7 be subject?
23. Given the age distribution of a population that can be supposed stable, along with its rate of increase, find its life table.
24. If the life table and the crude death rate of a stable population are known, show how to calculate its rate of increase.
25. How sensitive is the solution in Problem 24 to errors in $d$ ?
26. Given the number in the stable population at three ages, find the rate of increase and the life table, on the assumption that the age-specific death rates are fitted by a hyperbola, i.e., that $\mu(x)=\mu_{0} /(\omega-x)$.
27. Why is it impossible to perform such a fitting if $l(x)$ of the life table is represented by an exponential?
28. A population can be assumed stable, and we know its life table and the fraction of the census population under 25 years of age. Show how to calculate its rate of increase.
29. Show that the proportion of persons in the population aged 60 and over is a declining function of the rate of increase of a population, and express the function in a simple exponential form.
30. With ${ }_{\omega-60} L_{60}=0.15$ and $m=25$, tabulate ${ }_{\omega-60} C_{60}$ as a function of $r$ and $m_{60}$ for the values

$$
\begin{aligned}
r & =0,0.01, \ldots, 0.04, \\
m_{60} & =67,68, \ldots, 72 .
\end{aligned}
$$

31. Show how to improve the accuracy of the exponential approximation in Problem 29 by incorporating the term in $r^{2}$.
32. Show that the derivative of $m$, the mean age, with respect to $r$ is minus the variance of the distribution $e^{-r x} l(x) d x$ taken over the whole range of life, and the derivative of $m_{60}$ is similarly the variance of the ages 60 and over.
33. A retirement colony that people enter at age 70 wants to increase fast enough that its death rate will be no more than 7 percent per year. Given the life table, show how to calculate the required rate of increase.
34. Of two populations, one has a life table $l(x)$, the other $l^{\prime}(x)$, and the age distribution of the first is $c(x)$, of the second is $c^{\prime}(x)$. How much of the difference between $c(x)$ and $c^{\prime}(x)$ is due to mortality differences?
35. What is the interaction of mortality and fertility on the intrinsic rate?
36. Sixty percent of the population of Mexico is under 25 years of age, and we can suppose that in its life table the fraction under 25 is 35 percent, the mean age is 35 and the variance of ages is 550 . How fast is Mexico increasing?
37. By how much is the mean age of a population less than that of a standard population, if its rate of increase is greater than the standard by 0.001 ?
38. Two countries have the same life table, and one is increasing at 2 percent per annum, the other is stationary. The burden of old-age pensions can be defined as the ratio of the population over age 65 to that 20 to 65 . What is the difference in the burden between the stationary and the increasing population?
39. Suppose a stable population increasing at 1 percent per year, and with all members subject to a death rate of 1.5 percent uniform at all ages. What fraction will be over 50 years of age?
40. Express the variance of an increasing stable population in terms of the variance and higher cumulants of the life table on which it is based.
41. In a certain hypothetical primitive community men marry at age 40 and women at age 20 . How fast does the community have to be increasing for each man to have two wives?
42. Social security benefits of those past 65 paid by the working population year by year, a method called pay-as-you-go, may be contrasted with a funded scheme in which each cohort saves for its old age. Supposing a stable working population, calculate the amount that a person of working age (say 20 to 65) has to pay on the average to support the population over age 65 with $\$ 1$ per year. Show that this is identical with the actuarial premium on a funded scheme if the rate of interest is equal to the rate of increase of the population.
43. We saw in Chapter I that if there are $n_{1}$ births at time $t_{1}$, and $n_{2}$ births at time $t_{2}$, the total number of persons who would have been born in the interval from time $t_{1}$ to time $t_{2}$ is

$$
\text { Persons lived }=P l=\frac{\left(n_{2}-n_{1}\right)\left(t_{2}-t_{1}\right)}{\ln n_{2}-\ln n_{1}},
$$

on the assumption that the rate of increase of births was constant over the period. Now calculate the number of persons who reached age $x$ (say 60) over the period, and then the number of person-years lived, assuming a fixed life table.
44. Show that at the end of an extended period of geometric increase the fraction of the population still alive for any age is nearly $r / b$, supposing as before constant rates of mortality and natural increase.
45. In a population with fixed life table and uniformly growing at rate $r$, how many person-years are lived by the cohort born when births are $B$ ? How many person-years are lived in the calendar year when births are $B$ ?
46. Express the relation between the expectation of life and the personyears lived in a given year per one current birth as a simple function of $r$.
47. How many person-years are lived by the cohorts born between time $t_{1}$ when births are $b_{1}$ and time $t_{2}$ when births are $b_{2}$ ?
48. What about person-years in the calendar years between $t_{1}$ and $t_{2}$ ?
49. There are $B$ female births in a particular year in a stable population. How many children will ultimately be born to those females?
50. How many children remain to be born to the $N$ women alive at a particular moment? How many have they already had?
51. Find an expression for the average number of children per year per one member of the stable population, and compare with the corresponding figure for a cohort.
52. Find the sex ratio for persons aged $x$ in the stable population, in which the male and female life tables are different but the rate of increase of the sexes is the same, and the ratio of boy to girl births is $s$.
53. A commonly used approximation to the stable population in 5-year age intervals is

Show that this is too low, and find by approximately how much.
54. With a given life table a population increasing rapidly, being young, has a lower crude death rate. But this effect only goes to a certain point; if the rate of increase becomes very great the crude death rate would start to increase again. Explain why in words. With given life table what birth rate makes the death rate a minimum? (Lotka 1938.)

### 3.2. Solutions

1. Births are increasing at rate $r$, so $x$ years ago they were $e^{-r x}$ times what they are now. Now they are $b$ per one of total population, so $x$ years ago they must have been $b e^{-r x}$, still per one of present total population. If $b e^{-r x}$ is the number of births $x$ years ago, and the fraction of these births that survived is $l(x)$, then the number of survivors must be $b e^{-r x} l(x)$. The same argument for a time interval $d x$ rather than one year gives the present number of persons aged $x$ to $x+d x$ as $b e^{-r x} l(x) d x$.
2. Since $b e^{-r x} l(x) d x$ is the fraction of the population aged $x$ to $x+d x$ its total over all ages must be unity, i.e.,

$$
\int_{0}^{\omega} b e^{-r x} l(x) d x=1, \quad \text { so } b=\frac{1}{\int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x} .
$$

3. The number of persons at age $x$ is $b e^{-r x} l(x) d x$, where

$$
b e^{-r x} l(x) d x=b e^{-r x} \exp \left(-\int_{0}^{x} \mu(a) d a\right) d x
$$

from which it is plainly indifferent whether one adds a constant $\delta$ to the $r$ or to the $\mu(a)$. The same applies to the integral whose reciprocal is $b$.
4. Differentiating the expression $b e^{-r x} l(x)$ with respect to $x$ gives

$$
-b r e^{-r x} l(x)-b e^{-r x} l(x) \mu(x)=-b e^{-r x} l(x)(r+\mu(x))
$$

5. The question is equivalent to asking when the second derivative of $b e^{-r x} l(x)$ is positive. Twice differentiating

$$
e^{-r x} l(x)=\exp \left(-\left(r x+\int_{0}^{x} \mu(a) d a\right)\right)
$$

with respect to $x$ gives

$$
\frac{d^{2}\left(e^{-r x} l(x)\right)}{d x^{2}}=e^{-r x} l(x)\left(-\mu^{\prime}(x)+(r+\mu(x))^{2}\right),
$$

and the original curve $e^{-r x} l(x)$ is concave above if this is positive, i.e., if $\mu^{\prime}(x)<(r+\mu(x))^{2}$.
6. The above definition is equivalent to

$$
d=-\int_{0}^{\omega} b e^{-r x} d l(x)
$$

and integrating by parts we have

$$
-\left.b e^{-r x} l(x)\right|_{0} ^{\omega}-r \int_{0}^{\omega} b e^{-r x} l(x) d x
$$

or, since the integral on the right is equal to unity, $b-r$. We know that $d=b-r$ for any closed population; the above is merely to check the consistency of our expressions.
7. From stable population theory we have for the fraction of population aged $x$

$$
b e^{-r x} l_{x}=c_{x}
$$

and for the fraction of population aged $y$

$$
b e^{-r y} l_{y}=c_{y}
$$

and taking logarithms reduces these to a pair of linear equations of first degree whose solution in $\hat{r}$ is

$$
\hat{r}=\frac{1}{y-x} \ln \frac{c_{x} / l_{x}}{c_{y} / l_{y}} .
$$

For this to be a good approximation we need $c_{x}$ to be the number of persons at age $x$ to nearest birthday, and similarly for $c_{y}$. If $c_{x}$ and $c_{y}$ are the numbers at last birthday, a better approximation would be obtained by replacing $l_{x}$ and $l_{y}$ by

$$
L_{x} \doteq \frac{1}{2}\left(l_{x}+l_{x+1}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad L_{y} \doteq \frac{1}{2}\left(l_{y}+l_{y+1}\right) .
$$

8. At least a lower bound for the variance would be obtained by calculating $r$ from various combinations of $x$ and $y$. Beyond that one would collect data on a number of populations with known $r$ and $l(x)$, then use the method of Problem 7 to make an estimate $\hat{\gamma}$ for each population, and take the standard error of the departures $\hat{r}-r$.
9. Apply the formula of Problem 7 after adapting it to 5 -year ranges to obtain $r=0.0297$.
10. The true rate of increase, by the same formula as in Problem 7, but with $c_{x}$ diminished by $100 \delta$ percent, is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\bar{r} & =\frac{1}{y-x} \ln \frac{c_{x}(1-\delta) / l_{x}}{c_{y} / l_{y}} \\
& =\hat{r}+\frac{\ln (1-\delta)}{y-x} \doteq \hat{r}-\frac{\delta}{y-x} .
\end{aligned}
$$

This suggests that the error in estimating the rate of increase from two ages by relying on stable population theory is inversely proportional to the difference between the ages.
11. We can show that when the life table force of mortality is high by the same $\delta$ at all ages the rate of increase as calculated by (7) will be low by $\delta$. It follows that the estimated $\hat{\gamma}$ is subject to variance $\sigma^{2}$.
12. If the population aged $x$ at last birthday is $C_{x}$, the number of births $x$ years ago must have been $C_{x} / L_{x}$, and similarly the number of births $y$ years ago must have been $C_{y} / L_{y}$. Hence the average rate of increase of births between $x$ and $y$ years ago must have been the average rate of increase between these numbers:

$$
r=\frac{1}{y-x} \ln \frac{C_{x} / L_{x}}{C_{y} / L_{y}} .
$$

The result in Problem 7 applied to a stable population; the present result is general.
13. The equation to be solved for $r$ is now

$$
\frac{{ }_{u} C_{x}}{{ }_{v} C_{y}}=\frac{\int_{x}^{x+u} e^{-r a l}(a) d a}{\int_{y}^{y+v} e^{-r a l}(a) d a} .
$$

By factoring out $e^{-r(x+u / 2)}$ from the integral in the numerator and $e^{-r(y+\nu / 2)}$ from that in the denominator, then solving for the $r$ that is outside the integral signs, we obtain the iterative expression

$$
r^{*}=\frac{1}{y-x+\frac{v}{2}-\frac{u}{2}} \ln \frac{{ }_{u} C_{x} / \int_{-u / 2}^{u / 2} e^{-r t l}\left(t+x+\frac{u}{2}\right) \dddot{{ }_{v}} C_{y} / \int_{-v / 2}^{v / 2} e^{-r t}\left(t+y+\frac{v}{2}\right) d t}{}
$$

Starting with an arbitrary value of $r$, say zero, calculating the integrals, thus obtaining $r^{*}$, then entering $r^{*}$ in the integrals, and so proceeding, we will find that convergence occurs with few iterates, especially when $x$ and $y$ are far apart. Note that if $x=y$ no solution is possible.
14. The mean age of the stable population can be written as

$$
\frac{\int_{0}^{\omega} x e^{-r x} l(x) d x}{\int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}
$$

and each of the integrals can be expanded in an ascending series in $r$ :

$$
\bar{x}=\frac{L_{1}-r L_{2}+r^{2} L_{3} / 2!-\cdots}{L_{0}-r L_{1}+r^{2} L_{2} / 2!-\cdots}
$$

where

$$
L_{i}=\int_{0}^{\omega} x^{i} l(x) d x
$$

Then by ordinary division up to the term in $r$, we have

$$
\bar{x}=\frac{L_{1}}{L_{0}}-r\left(\frac{L_{2}}{L_{0}}-\left(\frac{L_{1}}{L_{0}}\right)^{2}\right)
$$

or if $\sigma^{\mathbf{2}}$ is the variance of the stationary age distribution,

$$
\bar{x}=\frac{L_{1}}{L_{0}}-r \sigma^{2} .
$$

Solving this for $r$ gives the required

$$
r=\frac{L_{1} / L_{0}-\bar{x}}{\sigma^{2}}
$$

15. If the assumed force of mortality $\mu(x)$ was too high by 0.0001 , then the true force of mortality was

$$
\mu^{*}(x)=\mu(x)-0.0001
$$

and the true survivorship was

$$
l^{*}(x)=l(x) e^{0.0001 x},
$$

and entering this in place of $l_{x}$ in Problem 7, and similarly for $l_{y}$, we end up with

$$
\hat{r}^{*}=\hat{r}+0.0001
$$

in terms of the $\hat{r}$ in (7).
16. If the age-specific rate for those born $y$ years ago is $\mu(a)$, and that for the cohort born $x$ years ago $(x<y)$ is $\mu^{*}(a)=\mu(a)+k(y-x)$, then

$$
l_{x}^{*}=l_{x} e^{-k(y-x) x},
$$

and the estimate reduces to

$$
\begin{aligned}
r_{1} & =\frac{1}{y-x} \ln \frac{C_{x} /\left(l_{x} e^{-k(y-x) x}\right)}{C_{y} / l_{y}} \\
& =\hat{\gamma}+k x
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\hat{p}$ is the solution in Problem 7.
17. By the same method, but now with

$$
\mu^{*}(a)=\mu(a)(1+(y-x) k),
$$

the algebra brings us to

$$
r_{2}=\hat{p}-k \ln l_{x} .
$$

18. The information suffices to apply the expression in Problem 7, so we have

$$
r=\frac{1}{62.5-37.5} \ln \left(\frac{2.318}{1.249}\right)=0.0247
$$

19. Our answer to this question is the program in BASIC that follows and provides the numerical results printed out below it.
```
10 'CALCULATION OF RATE OF INCREASE FROM VARIOUS'
20 'COMEINATIONS OF AGES
30 FOR I=1 TO 5
4 0 ~ R E A D ~ C ( I ) ~ ' r e a d ~ i n ~ p o p u l a t i o n ~
5O READ L(I) 'READ IN SURVIVORSHIP
60 NEXT I
70 DATA 19118,467241
BO OATA 9393,461603
90 DATA 8025,451857
100 OATA 7194,431635!
110 DATA 5848,389524!
120 'CALCULATE FRACTION AT EACH AGE IN OBSERVED POPULATION
130 FOR I=1 TO 5
140 D(I)=C(I)/149083! 'OIVIOE BY TOTAL POPULATION
15O NEXT I
160 'FINO RATE OF INCREASE FROM ALL COMBINATIONS OF AGES
170 FOR I=1 TO 5
180 FOR J=I+1 TO 5 'INNER LOOP FOR ALL AGE J GREATER THAN I
190 R=O(I)/L(I)/D(J)/L(J)
200 R=LOG (R)
210 R=R/10
220 R=R/.(J-I) 'ESTIMATED RATE OF INCREASE
230 'PRINT OUT RESULTS
240 LPRINT 10"I;10%J;
250 LPRINT USING "####,#####";C(I);L(I);C(J);L(J);
260 LPRINT USING "#####.H####";R
270 NEXT J,I
280 'EXAMPLE SHOUS VARIABILITY OF ESTIMATE WHEN FORMULA IS
290 'APPLIED TO UNSTABLE POPULATION
```

| $\boldsymbol{x}$ | $\boldsymbol{y}$ | ${ }_{s} l_{x}$ | ${ }^{5} L_{x}$ | ${ }_{s} l_{y}$ | ${ }_{s} L_{y}$ | $\hat{\gamma}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 10 | 20 | 19,118 | 467,241 | 9,393 | 461,603 | 0.0699 |
| 10 | 30 | 19,118 | 467,241 | 8,025 | 451,857 | 0.0417 |
| 10 | 40 | 19,118 | 467,241 | 7,194 | 431,635 | 0.0299 |
| 10 | 50 | 19,118 | 467,241 | 5,848 | 389,524 | 0.0251 |
| 20 | 30 | 9,393 | 461,603 | 8,025 | 451,857 | 0.0136 |
| 20 | 40 | 9,393 | 461,603 | 7,194 | 431,635 | 0.0100 |
| 20 | 50 | 9,393 | 461,603 | 5,848 | 389,524 | 0.0101 |
| 30 | 40 | 8,025 | 451,857 | 7,194 | 431,635 | 0.0064 |
| 30 | 50 | 8,025 | 451,857 | 5,848 | 389,524 | 0.0084 |
| 40 | 50 | 7,194 | 431,635 | 5,848 | 389,524 | 0.0104 |

The considerable variation in the resultant value of $\hat{r}$, shown in the last column, is typical of populations that are both imperfectly enumerated and in process of destabilization as their birth and death rates fall.
20. The expression for Thompson's index may be written

$$
\frac{{ }_{5} C_{0}}{{ }_{30} C_{15}} / \frac{{ }_{5} L_{0}}{{ }_{30} L_{15}} .
$$

The integral

$$
{ }_{5} C_{0}=\int_{0}^{5} e^{-r x} l(x) d x
$$

is approximately

$$
e^{-2.5 r} \int_{0}^{5} l(x) d x=e^{-2.5 r_{5} L_{0}}
$$

and similarly

$$
{ }_{30} C_{15}=\int_{15}^{45} e^{-r x} l(x) d x \doteq e^{-30 r} \int_{15}^{45} l(x) d x,
$$

so Thompson's index reduces to $e^{27.5 r}$, and insofar as $27 \frac{1}{2}$ years is close to the length of a generation this is the ratio of increase over a generation, or $R_{0}$.
21. The expression in the question comes from taking the synthetic division one term beyond that of Problem 14. To solve we transpose and write the form

$$
r^{*}=\frac{\frac{L_{1}}{L_{0}}-\bar{x}}{\sigma^{2}-\frac{\kappa_{3} r}{2}},
$$

which is identical with the equation to be solved if $r=r^{*}$. Putting an asterisk beside the $r$ on the left reminds us that it is an improved value until convergence is attained.

```
10 'ITERATIVE SOLUTION OF QUADRATIC EQUATION
20 L=32.75:S2=465.9:'ENTER VALUES OF COEFFICIENTS
30 K3=3585:X=31.39
40 R=.01 'INITIAL UALUE FOR ITERATION
50 'ITERATE UNTIL SUCCESSIVE VALUES AGREE TO 7 PLACES
60 UHILE R-R1 'DIIFFERENCE OF SUCCESSIVE VALUES
70 R=R1 'REPLACE FIRST ITERATE BY SECONO
80 R1=L-X
90 R1=R1/(52-K3*R/2) 'CALCULATION OF NEXT ITERATE
100 LPRINT USING "###.#####";R1
110 UENO 'LOOP BACK TO 60 UNTIL R=R1
```

0.00292
0.00295
0.00295
0.00295
0.00295
22. Using the formula of Solution 7 we need to know how $r$ will be affected by the addition of random $\delta$ to $C_{x}$ and $\varepsilon$ to $C_{y}$. If we subtract the random errors we would obtain the true $\hat{r}_{0}$, say:

$$
\hat{r}_{v}=\frac{1}{y-x} \ln \frac{\left(C_{x}-\delta\right) / l_{x}}{\left(C_{y}-\varepsilon\right) / l_{y}},
$$

or

$$
\begin{aligned}
\hat{r}_{v} & =\frac{1}{y-x} \ln \left[\left(\frac{C_{x}}{l_{x}}\right)\left(1-\frac{\delta}{C_{x}}\right)\right]-\ln \left[\left(\frac{C_{y}}{l_{y}}\right)\left(1-\frac{\varepsilon}{C_{y}}\right)\right] \\
& =\hat{\gamma}+\ln \left(\frac{1-\frac{\delta}{C_{x}}}{1-\frac{\varepsilon}{C_{y}}}\right) /(y-x),
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\hat{r}$ is the solution in No. 7. Then

$$
\hat{r}_{v} \doteq \hat{r}-\left(\frac{\delta}{C_{x}}-\frac{\varepsilon}{C_{y}}\right) /(y-x)
$$

if the perturbations are small. And since they are uncorrelated the variance of $\hat{r}_{v}$ will be $\left(\sigma^{2} / C_{x}^{2}+\sigma^{2} / C_{y}^{2}\right) /(y-x)^{2}$.
23. The fraction of the population aged $x$ is $b e^{-r x} l(x)$; if the number of individuals enumerated at $x$ is the known $c(x)$ we have the equation

$$
c(x)=b e^{-r x} l(x), \quad x=0,1,2, \ldots
$$

to be solved for each value of $x$.
24. The birth rate $b$ is equal to

$$
1 / \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r x} l(x) d x
$$

But the birth rate is equal to the death rate $d$ plus the rate of natural increase $r$. Hence we have the equation

$$
d+r=\frac{1}{\int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}
$$

of which the only unknown is $r$, solvable by iteration.
25.

$$
\frac{d r}{d d}=\left\{\frac{\int_{0}^{\omega} x e^{-r x} l(x) d x}{\left[\int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x\right]^{2}}-1\right\}^{-1}
$$

26. If $\mu(x)=\mu_{0} /(\omega-x)$ then by integration and taking the exponential,

$$
l(x)=\left(1-\frac{x}{\omega}\right)^{\mu_{0}} .
$$

The equation to be fitted is

$$
C_{x}=b e^{-r x} l(x), \quad x=x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3},
$$

where the $C_{x}$ are known. With the hyperbolic life table this becomes

$$
C_{x}=b e^{-r x}\left(1-\frac{x}{\omega}\right)^{\mu_{0}},
$$

so we have three equations for the three unknowns $b, r$, and $\mu_{0}$, taking $\omega$ as 100 or other arbitrary number.
27. If the life table were $e^{-\lambda x}$ we would face a problem of identification; since the rate of increase and the constant enter only as the sum $r+\lambda$, no amount of data will enable us to ascertain their separate values.
28. The fraction of the population under 25 years of age is

$$
\alpha=\frac{\int_{0}^{25} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}{\int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x} .
$$

This is the required equation for the unknown intrinsic rate $r$. For an iterative formula that will converge to $r$, multiply both sides by $e^{10 r}$ and rearrange to obtain

$$
r^{*}=\frac{1}{10} \ln \left[\frac{\alpha \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r(x-20)} l(x) d x}{\int_{0}^{25} e^{-r(x-10)} l(x) d x}\right]
$$

Converting to the usual life table functions in 5-year intervals gives a form suitable for calculation:

$$
r^{*}=\frac{1}{10} \ln \left[\frac{\alpha \sum_{i=0}^{i=\omega-5} e^{-r(i-17.5)}{ }_{s} L_{i}}{\sum_{i=0}^{20} e^{-r(i-7.5)}{ }_{s} L_{i}}\right]
$$

where the summation is over every fifth age.
29. The proportion of the stable population aged $x$ to $x+d x$ is

$$
b e^{-r x} l(x) d x,
$$

where $l(x)$ is the probability of surviving from birth to age $x, r$ is the rate of increase, and $b$ is the birth rate. Then the proportion aged 60 and over is

$$
\omega-60 C_{60}=\frac{\int_{60}^{\infty} b e^{-r x} l(x) d x}{\int_{0}^{\omega} b e^{-r x} l(x) d x},
$$

where $\omega$ is the highest age to which anyone lives. By taking logarithms, then differentiating:

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d \ln _{\omega-60} C_{60}}{d r}=\frac{d_{\omega-60} C_{60}}{\omega-60} C_{60} d r & =-\frac{\int_{60}^{\omega} x e^{-r x} l(x) d x}{\int_{60}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}+\frac{\int_{0}^{\omega} x e^{-r x} l(x) d x}{\int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x} \\
& =m-m_{60}, \tag{1}
\end{align*}
$$

where $m$ is the mean age of the whole population, and $m_{60}$ is the mean age of those 60 and over. Since $m$ is necessarily smaller than $m_{60}$ the derivative is negative. This proves that the logarithm of the proportion over age 60 is a declining function of $r$, and hence that the proportion itself declines with $r$.

To approximate the function, note that

$$
\frac{d \ln _{\omega-60} C_{60}}{d r}=m-m_{60}
$$

can be considered a differential equation, whose solution is

$$
\ln _{\omega-60} C_{60}=\left(m-m_{60}\right) r+\kappa,
$$

$\kappa$ being an arbitrary constant, or if $L=e^{\kappa}$

$$
{ }_{\omega}-60 C_{60}=L e^{\left(m-m_{60}\right) r} .
$$

We would like to choose the constant $L$ so that when $r$ is zero the proportion is that of the life table. This gives in the end

$$
\begin{equation*}
\omega-60 C_{60} \doteq \frac{\omega-60 L_{60}}{\grave{e}_{0}} e^{\left(m-m_{60}\right) r}, \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\dot{e}_{0}$ being the expectation of life at age zero, and the $L$ function the integral of the $l(x)$ from age 60 to the end of life.

As a numerical example applicable to a rapidly growing population, $r$ might be $0.03, \mathrm{~m}$ might be 25 years of age, $m_{60}$ might be 70 years, and the proportion over 60 in the life table might be 0.15 . Then the proportion over 60 in the stable population is

$$
{ }_{\omega-60} C_{60} \doteq 0.15 e^{-45 r}=0.15 e^{-1.35}=0.0389 .
$$

30. 
```
IPROPORTION OVER 6O IN THE STABLE POPULATION
FOR MGO=67 TO 72 'OUTER LOOP FBR VALUES OF MEAN AGE
LPRINT M6O;
FOR R=0 TO . }04\mathrm{ STEP . }01\mathrm{ IINNER LOOP FOR VALUES OF RATE R
PROP=.15*EXP((25-M60)~R) 'CALCULATE PROPORTION OVER 6O
6 LPRINT USING "#####.####";PROP,
7 NEXT R TENO INNER LOOP
8 LPRINT
g NEXT MGO 'END OUTER LOOP
```

| Mean age <br> of pop <br> $60+$ | Values of $r$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 0 | 0.01 | 0.02 | 0.03 | 0.04 |  |
| 67 | 0.1500 | 0.0986 | 0.0648 | 0.0425 | 0.0280 |  |
| 68 | 0.1500 | 0.0976 | 0.0635 | 0.0413 | 0.0269 |  |
| 69 | 0.1500 | 0.0966 | 0.0622 | 0.0401 | 0.0258 |  |
| $70:$ | 0.1500 | 0.0956 | 0.0610 | 0.0389 | 0.0248 |  |
| 71 | 0.1500 | 0.0947 | 0.0598 | 0.0377 | 0.0238 |  |
| 72 | 0.1500 | 0.0938 | 0.0586 | 0.0366 | 0.0229 |  |

The conclusion is that the proportion varies moderately with the mean age assumed and a great deal with the rate of increase.
31. We have the expansion of $\ln _{\omega-60} C_{60}$ as $\kappa+\left(m-m_{60}\right) r+$ $\left(\sigma_{60}^{2}-\sigma^{2}\right)\left(r^{2} / 2\right)$, where $\kappa$ as before is the logarithm of ${ }_{\omega-60} L_{60} / e_{0}, \sigma_{60}^{2}$ is the variance in age of the population over 60 and $\sigma^{2}$ the variance in age of the entire population. Taking exponentials gives

$$
\omega-60 C_{60} \doteq \frac{\omega-60}{} L_{60} \exp \left(\left(m-m_{60}\right) r+\left(\sigma_{60}^{2}-\sigma^{2}\right)\left(r^{2} / 2\right)\right) .
$$

Note that the differentiations, integrations, and functions here are with respect to populations having different values of $r$, conceived as existing contemporaneously. The argument belongs to what is called comparative statics, in which various stable conditions are compared.
32. By definition

$$
\begin{aligned}
m & =\frac{\int_{0}^{\infty} x e^{-r x} l(x) d x}{\int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}, \\
\frac{d m}{d r} & =\frac{-\int_{0}^{\infty} x^{2} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}{\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}+\left(\frac{\int_{0}^{\infty} x e^{-r x} l(x) d x}{\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}\right)^{2},
\end{aligned}
$$

and this is minus the variance of the age distribution through the whole of life. The argument carries through unchanged if the lower limit of the integral is 60 throughout, or any other age between 0 and $\omega$.
33. The death rate in the colony is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\int_{70}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) \mu(x) d x}{\int_{70}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x} \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

and we need to equate this to 0.07 and then solve for $r$. For an iterative solution we multiply both sides of the equation by $e^{5 r}$ and both integrals by $e^{75 r}$ to obtain

$$
\frac{\int_{70}^{\omega} e^{-r(x-80} l(x) \mu(x) d x}{\int_{70}^{\omega} e^{-r(x-75)} l(x) d x}=0.07 e^{5 r}
$$

and if $r^{*}$ is the improved value in each cycle of iteration this becomes on rearrangement

$$
r^{*}=\frac{1}{5}\left[\ln \left[\frac{\int_{70}^{\omega} e^{-r(x-80)} l(x) \mu(x) d x}{\iint_{70}^{\omega} e^{-r(x-75)} l(x) d x}\right]-\ln 0.07\right] .
$$

A numerical example for Canada 1965 females follows. Data are the ${ }_{5} d_{x}$ and ${ }_{5} L_{x}$ columns of the life table.

```
10 'ITERATIVE PROCEDURE FOR FINDING
20 'RATE OF INCREASE FOR RETIREMENT HOME
```



```
40 'FROM KEYFITZ & FLIEGER, 1968, P. 90 
60 'NUMOER LIVING RESPECTIVELY
70 FOR I=1 TO 4
BO READ O(I),L(I)
90 NEXT I
100 DATA 11490,343248
110 DATA 15150,276570
120 DATA 18504,191061
130 DATA 28943,146959
140 R1=.01 'ARBITRARY INITIAL VALUE OF RATE OF INCREASE
150 WHILE R1-R
160 'BUILD UP NUMERATOR AND DENOMINATOR OF LOGARITHM
170R=81
1 8 0 N = O
190 0=0
200 FOR I=1 TO 4
210 N=N+D(I)*EXP((12.5-5*I)*R) 'NUMERATOR
220 D=D +L(I) FEXP((7.5-5*I):R) DENOMINATOR
230 NEXT I
240 'NOU THE ITERATIVE PROCESS PROPER
250 R1=(LOG(N/O)-LOG(.07))/S IMPROVED VALUE OF RATE OF INCREASE
260 LPRINT R1,
270 UEND "LOOP BACK TO "UHILE"
280 LPRINT: LPRINT
290 LPRINT "THE HOME UOULD HAVE TO INCREASE AT";
300 LPRINT 100*R1;"PERCENT PER YEAR"
310 END
```

| .0227015 | .0262595 | .0272797 | .0275745 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

the home would have to increase at 2.76947 percent per year
34. Writing out the expressions for $c(x)$ and for $c^{\prime}(x)$ and subtracting gives for the overall difference

$$
c^{\prime}(x)-c(x)=\frac{e^{-r^{\prime} x} l^{\prime}(x)}{\int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r^{\prime} x} l^{\prime}(x) d x}-\frac{e^{-r x} l(x)}{\int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x},
$$

where $r$ is the solution of $\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x=1$ and $r^{\prime}$ is the solution of
 tained by the corresponding difference with fertility made the same for the two populations, that is, we would take the above difference except for substituting in the first term an $r$ obtained as the solution of

$$
\int_{a}^{\beta} e^{-r x} l^{\prime}(x) m(x) d x=1,
$$

say $r\left(l^{\prime}, m\right)$, and in the second $r(l, m)$. Similarly for the effect of fertility differences, which would require us to solve the characteristic equation with $m^{\prime}(x)$ and $l(x)$.
35. In the notation of Solution 34,

$$
r\left(l^{\prime}, m^{\prime}\right)-r\left(l, m^{\prime}\right)-r\left(l^{\prime}, m\right)+r(l, m) .
$$

36. Filling in what we know in the formula of Solution 31, suitably modified to represent under 25 rather than 60 and over, we have

$$
0.60=0.35 e^{(35-m-2 s) r+\left(\sigma^{2}-25-550\right)\left(r^{2} / 2\right)},
$$

where $m_{-25}$ is the mean age of those under 25 and $\sigma_{-25}^{2}$ their variance. But the mean age of the under 25 cannot be very far from 10, and the variance of the ages under 25 cannot be far from the square of one-third of the interval, i.e., about 60 . Taking logarithms this gives an equation in which only $r$ is missing:

$$
\ln \left(\frac{0.60}{0.35}\right)=(35-10) r+(60-550)\left(r^{2} / 2\right)
$$

or

$$
0.539=25 r-245 r^{2}
$$

Such an equation may be solved by the quadratic formula, or if a programmable calculator is available by rearrangement to obtain the iterative process:

$$
r^{*}=\frac{0.539}{25-245 r}
$$

Successive iterates are $0,0.0216,0.0273,0.0294,0.0303,0.0307,0.0308$, 0.0309 .

Following is a BASIC program for accomplishing this.

```
10 'ITERATIVE PROCESS FOR THE INTRINSIC RATE
20 'A METHOD FOR SOLVING A QUAORATIC,EQUATION
30:R=.01 'INITIAL VALUE OF RATE
40 WHILE R1-R '
SO R=R1
60 R1=.539/(25-245*R) ' IMPROVED VALUE
70 LPRINT R;
8O WENO 'BACK TO "UHILE"
\begin{tabular}{lllllll}
0 & .02156 & .0273357 & .0294491 & .0303065 & .0306687 & .0308244
\end{tabular} .0308917
```

37. Using the expression developed in Solution 14 the answer must be that a population higher in rate of increase by 0.001 must have a mean age lower by $0.001 \sigma^{2}$, where $\sigma^{2}$ is the variance of the life table. The typical life table has variance about 500; for example, the United States in 1964
showed 500.0 for males and 560.5 for females (Keyfitz and Flieger 1968, p. 175). Hence onc can say that the faster growing population will have a mean age lower by about $0.001(500)$, or half a year.
38. Applying the expression for the burden

$$
b=\frac{\int_{65}^{\infty} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}{\int_{20}^{65} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}
$$

which is derived from the stable population, taking logarithms of both sides, and differentiating, we have

$$
\frac{d \ln b}{d r}=\kappa_{1}-k_{1}
$$

where $\kappa_{1}$ is the mean of the population 20 to $65, k_{1}$ the mean of those over 65 . In finite terms, and supposing $\kappa_{1}=35, k_{1}=75$, we have

$$
\frac{\Delta b}{b}=\left(\kappa_{1}-k_{1}\right) \Delta r=-40 \Delta r,
$$

so that for each percentage point of difference in $r$ there will be a difference of 40 percent (not percentage points) in $b$ in the opposite direction.
39. The fraction must be

$$
\begin{aligned}
f=\frac{\int_{50}^{\infty} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}{\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r x} l(x) d x} & =\frac{\int_{50}^{\infty} e^{-(0.01+0.015) x} d x}{\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-(0.01+0.015) x} d x} \\
& =e^{-(0.025)(50)}=e^{-1.25}=0.287 .
\end{aligned}
$$

40. We need to estimate

$$
\sigma_{s}^{2}=\frac{\int_{0}^{\omega}(x-\bar{x})^{2} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}{\int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}
$$

by expanding its exponentials and then dividing.
41. If the population is stable, and men and women increase at the same rate, and if equal numbers of boy and girl babies are born, then the number of men aged 40 will be $B e^{-40 r} l_{40}$ and of women aged $20 \mathrm{Be}^{-20 r} l_{20}$, where $B$ is the number of current births, and the male life table is distinguished with a star. The conditions of the problem may be expressed as

$$
B e^{-20 r} l_{20}=2 B e^{-40 r} l_{40}^{*}
$$

so we must have

$$
e^{20 r}=\frac{2 l_{40}^{*}}{l_{20}}
$$

and therefore

$$
r=\frac{1}{20} \ln \frac{2 l_{40}^{*}}{l_{20}} .
$$

For Togo 1961, $l_{40}^{*}$ for males is $0.43, l_{20}$ for females is 0.62 (Keyfitz and Flieger 1968, p. 74), so we have the required $r$ as 0.016 . The very moderate increase of $1: 6$ percent per year suffices for each man to have two wives.
42. The pay-as-you-go (payg) premium is the ratio of the population of drawing age to that of working age, i.e.,

$$
P_{\text {payg }}=\frac{\int_{65}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}{\int_{20}^{65} e^{-r x l}(x) d x} .
$$

For the funded scheme, if we discount to birth the premiums and the benefits at rate $\delta$,

$$
P_{\text {fund }}=\frac{\int_{65}^{\infty} e^{-\delta x} l(x) d x}{\int_{20}^{65} e^{-\delta x} l(x) d x} .
$$

If $\delta=r$ the two are the same.
43. The initial population aged $x$ would have been $n_{1} e^{-r x}(x)$, and the final population $n_{2} e^{-r x} l(x)$, and so with geometric increase we would have for the total attaining age $x$

$$
\begin{aligned}
P l_{x} & =\frac{\left(n_{2} e^{-r x} l(x)-n_{1} e^{-r x} l(x)\right)\left(t_{2}-t_{1}\right)}{\ln n_{2}-\ln n_{1}} \\
& =\left(e^{-r x} l(x)\right)(P l),
\end{aligned}
$$

$P l$ being the person-years lived by all ages together. In short, we need only multiply the total lived by the number aged $x$ as a fraction of births. Total person-years lived would be

$$
P y l=P l \int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x=P l / b .
$$

where $b$ is the crude or overall birth rate.
44. If at the start the number of births is 1 , then the number of persons who lived is nearly

$$
\frac{\left(n_{2}-n_{1}\right)\left(t_{2}-t_{1}\right)}{\ln n_{2}-\ln n_{1}} \doteq \frac{\left(n_{2}\right)\left(t_{2}\right)}{\ln \left(e^{r t_{2}}\right)}=\frac{n_{2}}{r},
$$

i.e., number of births divided by rate of increase. Then dividing by the population at time $t_{2}$, this becomes $b / r$, where $b$ is the birth rate. The ratio of the current population to the ever-lived is the reciprocal of this, or $r / b$.
45. The cohort lives $B{ }_{0}^{0}$ person-years; the person-years lived in the calendar year are

$$
B \int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x
$$

or $B / b$, where $b$ is the crude or intrinsic birth rate.
46. For the expectation of life we have

$$
\AA_{0}=\int_{0}^{\omega} l(x) d x
$$

and for the person-years in a given calendar year we have

$$
\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r x} l(x) d x .
$$

To expand the integral in the latter expression by developing $e^{-r x}$ in powers of $x$ would not do because the moments about any point become very large. But the cumulants increase slowly, so we take the logarithm of $\int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x$ to obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\ln \frac{\int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}{\grave{e}_{0}} & \doteq-\frac{L_{1}}{L_{0}} r+\sigma^{2} \frac{r^{2}}{2} \\
\frac{\int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}{\grave{e}_{0}} & =\exp \left(-\frac{L_{1}}{L_{0}} r+\sigma^{2} \frac{r^{2}}{2}\right) \\
& \doteq 1-\frac{L_{1}}{L_{0}} r+\sigma^{2} \frac{r^{2}}{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

or

$$
\int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r x} l(x) d x \doteq \dot{e}_{0}\left(1-\frac{L_{1}}{L_{0}} r+\sigma^{2} \frac{r^{2}}{2}\right),
$$

so the required difference is nearly

$$
\dot{e}_{0}\left(\frac{L_{1}}{L_{0}} r-\frac{\sigma^{2} r^{2}}{2}\right) .
$$

The relation between the two quantities is easily found in terms of life table moments and the rate of increase $r$.
47. The total births during the time are given in Chapter I as

$$
\frac{\left(t_{2}-t_{1}\right)\left(b_{2}-b_{1}\right)}{\ln b_{2}-\ln b_{1}}
$$

the total person-years are this times $\stackrel{e}{0}_{0}$.
48. Same as before, but multiplying by $\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r x} l(x) d x$ instead of $\dot{e}_{0}$.
49. The probability of each of the girl children reaching $x$ years is $l(x)$; the probability of her having a child between age $x$ and $x+d x$ is $m(x)$, say; the total expected children that will be born to her is the sum

$$
\int_{0}^{\infty} l(x) m(x) d x
$$

a quantity known as the net reproduction rate and designated $R_{0}$. The total number of children expected to be born is $B R_{0}$.
50. Among the $N$ women are $N b e^{-r a l(a) d a}$ aged $a$ to $a+d a$. Women $a$ years of age can expect to have

$$
\int_{a}^{\beta} l(x) m(x) d x
$$

children; the total expected must therefore be

$$
N b \int_{0}^{\beta} e^{-r a l}(a) \int_{a}^{\beta} l(x) m(x) d x d a,
$$

where $\alpha$ is the youngest and $\beta$ the oldest age of childbearing. The number of children they have already had differs in that the inner integral has limits $\alpha$ and $a$, and omits the $l(x)$, since those women are alive at the time:

$$
N b \int_{0}^{\beta} e^{-r a l(a)} \int_{a}^{a} m(x) d x d a .
$$

Note that the number they have had plus the number they will have add to more than the total $N R_{0}$ obtained by assigning $R_{0}$ to each.
51. We have $b=1 / \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r x} l(x) d x$ for the stable population and $b^{\prime}=$ $1 / \int_{0}^{\infty} l(x) d x$ for the cohort.
52. Per one girl born the number of females aged $x$ is $e^{-r x} l(x)$; the number of boy births is $s$, and hence the number of males aged $x$ is $s e^{-r x} \|^{*}(x)$, where $l^{*}(x)$ is the male survivorship function and $l(x)$ the female. Hence the ratio of the male to the female population at age $x$ is

$$
\frac{s e^{-r x} l^{*}(x)}{e^{-r x} l(x)}=\frac{s l^{*}(x)}{l(x)}
$$

a quantity dependent only on the life table and the sex ratio at birth, but not on the common rate of increase.
53. Put $a=u+x+2 \frac{1}{2}$. Then
supposing $l(a)$ is close to a straight line (or other odd function) within the age interval. If this is so the coefficient of $r^{2}$ is approximately equal to the variance $\sigma_{x}^{2}$ of $l(a)$ within the interval $x, x+5$, so we have

$$
\int_{x}^{x+5} e^{-r a l(a) d a=e^{-r(x+2.5)}\left({ }_{s} L_{x}+\frac{r^{2} \sigma_{x}^{2}}{2}\right) . . . . . . .}
$$

54. We want to find the minimum of

$$
d=\frac{\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r x} l(x) \mu(x) d x}{\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r x} l(x) d x} .
$$

Using the fact that $l(x) \mu(x) d x=-d l(x)$ and integrating in the numerator by parts, we have

$$
d=\frac{1}{\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r x} l(x) d x}-r .
$$

To find the minimum differentiate with respect to $r$ and equate to zero to obtain

$$
b \bar{A}_{r}-1=0,
$$

where $\bar{A}_{r}$ is the mean age in the stable population of rate of increase $r$. The solution is $b=1 / \bar{A}_{r} ;$ iteration is required to find the precise answer.

## CHAPTER IV

## Births and Deaths Under Stability

The previous chapter dealt with the properties of a population having a given life table and an arbitrary rate of increase $r$. In this chapter the rate of increase is no longer arbitrary, but determined by the life table and agespecific birth rates. We start with several wholly unoriginal questions designed only to elicit the basic theory.

### 4.1. Problems

1. Set down an equation showing the number of births in one generation in terms of the number of births in the preceding generation, age-specific rates of birth and death being given and fixed. Confine the model to one sex, say females.
2. Solve the equation of Problem 1 for the implied rate of increase on the supposition that the trajectory is an exponential starting with $B_{0}$ at time zero.
3. Sketch any one of the methods available for solving the equation of Problem 2 for the unknown $r$, given the net maternity function $l(x) m(x)$.
4. Given the net maternity function for mothers and girl babies, ${ }_{5} L_{x} F_{x}$, of Ireland in 1926, find the intrinsic rate of natural increase $r$. (Keyfitz and Flieger 1968, p. 380.)

| $\boldsymbol{x}$ | ${ }_{5} L_{x}$ | ${ }_{5} F_{x}$ | ${ }_{s} L_{x}{ }_{5} F_{x}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 15 | 4.321 | 0.0023 | 0.0098 |
| 20 | 4.232 | 0.0347 | 0.1468 |
| 25 | 4.127 | 0.0805 | 0.3322 |
| 30 | 4.011 | 0.0897 | 0.3597 |
| 35 | 3.882 | 0.0660 | 0.2562 |
| 40 | 3.740 | 0.0324 | 0.1211 |

5. Given similar data for Mexico, 1962, find Mexico's rate of increase, and show how much of the difference between Ireland's rate of increase and Mexico's is due to differences in births, how much to differences in deaths.

| $\boldsymbol{x}$ | ${ }_{5} L_{x}$ | ${ }_{5} F_{x}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 15 | 4.344 | 0.2138 |
| 20 | 4.296 | 0.6171 |
| 25 | 4.230 | 0.6538 |
| 30 | 4.256 | 0.5113 |
| 35 | 4.061 | 0.4123 |
| 40 | 3.955 | 0.1865 |

6. It is shown in textbooks of numerical analysis, for example, Scarborough (1958, p. 209), that the convergence of a functional iteration such as that of the preceding problem depends only on the derivative $d r^{*} / d r$ being less than unity. If it is much less, convergence will be rapid. Find the derivative in the case of the formula for the intrinsic rate of Problem 3, and estimate roughly the number of decimal points obtained on each iteration.
7. Find the first two derivatives of the function, which may be designated $\psi(r)$, on the right-hand side of Problem 2, and state what their signs are.
8. Trace the function $\psi(r)$ in Problem 2 and its first two derivatives as calculated in Problem 7.
9. Prove that the equation in Problem 2 can have only one real root.
10. Apply the method of Problem 29 of Chapter III to births and show that the proportion of births to women over 30 varies rather little with the rate of increase.
11. Derive

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\sigma^{2} r^{2}}{2}-m r+\ln R_{0}=0 \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $R_{0}$ is the integral of the net maternity function and $m$ and $\sigma^{2}$ its mean and variance, as an approximation to the characteristic equation

$$
\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x=1
$$

12. If two stable populations have identical age-specific birth rates, and mortality rates in one are higher by $\delta$ at every age, show that their age-distributions are identical.
13. Show that a change of 0.001 (or any other amount) in death rates at all ages leaves age distributions unchanged for the short run, irrespective of whether the population is stable or not.
14. What difference does it make to the intrinsic rate if the age-specific fertility rate is lower by a small fraction $f$ at every age?
15. If the death rate at all ages is lower by $\delta$ in one population compared with another, by how much must the birth rate be lower to offset this so that the rate of increase of both populations is the same?
16. Show that with $r=0$ in Problem 2 each birth is replaced in the next generation by just one birth.
17. If the force of mortality is increased uniformly at all ages, and all else remains constant, the intrinsic rate will decrease. Show that an increase in the force of mortality equal to the intrinsic rate would ultimately bring the population down to stationarity.
18. Call the probability of $X$ falling between $x$ and $x+d x f(x) d x$, the mean value of $X$

$$
\bar{x}=\mu_{1}^{\prime}=\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x f(x) d x,
$$

and the series of moments about zero,

$$
\mu_{i}^{\prime}=\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^{i} f(x) d x .
$$

Then cumulants $\kappa_{i}$ are the coefficients of the expansion of the logarithm of the moment-generating function, i.e.,

$$
\ln \left(\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{r x} f(x) d x\right)=\kappa_{1} r+\frac{\kappa_{2} r^{2}}{2!}+\frac{\kappa_{3} r^{3}}{3!}+\cdots
$$

Express. $\kappa_{1}$ and $\kappa_{2}$ in terms of $\mu_{1}$ and $\mu_{2}$.
19. The length of generation is defined as that time in which a population increasing at annual rate $r$ compounded momently will grow in the ratio of the net reproduction rate, i.e., it is defined by the equation $R_{0}=e^{r T}$. Show how $T$ can be expressed as an infinite series in $r$.
20. Prove that the length of generation is the average of the mean age of childbearing in the stationary and in the stable populations.
21. How tight are the bounds that can be set on $r$ when $R_{0}$ is given?
22. If one quarter of the women of a country leave at the age of 35 , write the equation that will show what that does to the rate of increase.
23. Show that the intrinsic rate is positive when $R_{0}$ is greater than unity; zero when $R_{0}=1$; negative when $R_{0}$ is less than unity.
24. A woman has a daughter at the age of 23 and another at the age of 30. What would be the intrinsic rate of a population in which all women who survived had exactly this childbearing pattern, given $l_{23}=0.95$ and $l_{30}=0.93$ ?
25. What happens to the characteristic equation in Problem 2 in the special case where all cumulants beyond the second are zero?
26. By how much does a decrease of one year in the mean age of childbearing raise the intrinsic rate?
27. Check the derivatives of the preceding question numerically.
28. What is the average age at death in a stable population with force of mortality $\mu$ the same at all ages and rate of increase $r$ ? Contrast this result with the average age at which an individual can expect to die.
29. If of two stable populations one has death rates at all ages higher by $\delta$ than the other in absolute amount, and is increasing less rapidly by $\delta$, show that the two have identical birth rates.
30. Prove the converse of the above: that if two stable populations have identical crude birth rates and one has mortality at all ages higher by $\delta$ than the other, then the one with the higher death rates increases less rapidly by $\delta$.
31. A population is heterogeneous, containing two equal subpopulations, both initially stable, equal in number and increasing at the same rate $r$, but with different life tables. A medical procedure is applied that lowers mortality by amount $\varepsilon$ at all ages for one of the subpopulations. Under what circumstances will the use of this procedure raise the crude dcath rate of the population?
32. If $\omega(t)$ is an increasing function, and $a<1$, show that

$$
s(t)=\frac{\omega(t) a+1}{\omega(t)+1}
$$

is a decreasing function.
33. Show that in a heterogeneous population a medical improvement can diminish the chances of survival for a randomly chosen individual.

### 4.2. Solutions

1. We seek the unknown births as a function of time $B(t)$. From the agespecific death rates or force of mortality $\mu(x)$ a life table can be calculated, with $l(x)$ as the probability of survival from birth to age $x$. The number of
women aged $x$ at time $t$ must be equal to the births $x$ years before, $B(t-x)$, less deaths, i.e., $B(t-x) l(x)$. The birth rate being $m(x) d x$ for the age interval $x$ to $x+d x$, the women produce $B(t-x) l(x) m(x) d x$ children. The total of these through all ages must be equal to the current number of births $B(t)$, so we have the equation

$$
B(t)=\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} B(t-x) l(x) m(x) d x \text {, }
$$

where $\alpha$ is the youngest age of childbearing and $\beta$ the oldest. This equation does not permit*a solution for the birth trajectory, $B(t)$, in absolute numbers, since it does not provide any starting point for the process, but gives each generation in terms of the preceding one.
2. If the unknown trajectory is $B_{0} e^{r t}$ we can obtain an equation for the constant $r$ in place of the far more difficult equation for the function $B(t)$. Entering

$$
B(t)=B_{0} e^{r t}
$$

in the equation relating two successive generations, and then cancelling out $B_{0} e^{r t}$ from both sides, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
1=\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

as the equation for $r$.
3. Multiply both sides by $e^{27.5 r}$, take logarithms, and divide by $27 \frac{1}{2}$. This gives

$$
r^{*}=\frac{1}{27 \frac{1}{2}} \ln \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} e^{-r(x-27.5)} l(x) m(x) d x,
$$

where the $r$ on the left has been starred to show that at intermediate stages it is an improved value. Once convergence has been attained $r=r^{*}$, and when that is true $r$ must satisfy the original equation of Solution 2.

If one enters an arbitrary starting value for $r$ on the right-hand side, say zero, that gives an improved value on the left, $r^{*}$, which can in turn be entered on the right, and so continuing. Usually three or four iterations provide all the accuracy needed. In practice one would enter a sum of 5 -year age groups on the right in place of the integral; the $27 \frac{1}{2}$ has been arbitrarily chosen as the center of one of these groups near the mean age of childbearing.
4. The solution is as follows, expressed in the MBASIC language:

[^0]```
70 NEXT I
80 FOR I=1 TO-6
90 READ F(I)
100F(I) =F(I)/10000
110 N(I)=LL(I)*F(I)
120 NEXT I
130 DATA 4321,4232,4127,4011,3882,3740
140 DATA 23,347,805,897,660,324
150 R=.01
160 'THE LOOP IS DESIGNED TO CONTINUE UNTIL RSTAR-R=0
170 UHILE RSTAR-R
180 R=RSTAR
190 A=0
200 FOR I=1 TO 6
210 A=A+EXP((15-5*I)*R)*N(I)
220 NEXT I
230 RSTAR=LOG(A)/27.S
240 PRINT USING "#####,######;RSTAR
250 UEND
260 END
```

and this produced the sequence:
0.00741
0.00627
0.00645
0.00642
0.00642
0.00642
5. By converting the iteration into a subroutine and permuting the mortality and fertility schedules, we obtain the printout below:

```
IFUNCTIONAL ITERATION FOR THE INTRINSIC RATE
    'fIRST READ IN THE LIFE TABLE, THEN THE
IFEMALE AGE-SPECIFIC FERTILITY RATES
FOR I=1 TO 6
READ LL(I)
LL(I)=LL(I)/1000
NEXT I
FOR I=1 TD 6
READ F(I)
0 F(I)=F(I)/10000
N(I)=LL(I)PF(I)
NEXT I
FOR I=1 TO 6
READ LLMEX(I)
5LLMEX(I) =LLMEX(I)/1000
6 NEXT I
7 FOR I=1 TO S
B REAO FMEX(I)
19 FMEX(I)=FMEX(I)/10000
20 NEXT I
L LPRINT "IRISH MORTALITY AND IRISH FERTILITY"
2 GOSUB 43
23 DATA 4321,4232,4127,4011,3882,3740
24 DATA 23,347,805,897,660,324
25 DATA 4344,4296,4230,4156,4061,3955
26 DATA 492,1436,1545,1230,1015,472
27 FOR I=1 TO 6
28N(I)=LL(I)*FMEX(I)
29 NEXT I
30 LPRINT "IRISH MORTALITY ANO MEXICAN FERTILITY"
```

```
31 GOSUB 43
32 FDR I=1 TQ 6
33N(I) =LLMEX(I)*F(I)
34 NEXT I
35 LPRINT "MEXICAN MORTALITY AND IRISH FERTILITY"
36 GOSUB 43
37 FOR I=1 TO 6
38 N(I)=LLMEX(I)*FMEX(I)
39 NEXT I
40 LPRINT "MEXICAN MORTALITY AND MEXICAN FERTILITY"
4 1 ~ G O S U B ~ 4 3 ~
4 2 \text { END}
4 3 R = . 0 1
44. 'THE LOOP IS DESIGNED TO CONTINUE UNTIL RSTAR-R=0
45 UHILE RSTAR-R
4 6 ~ R = R S T A R ~
47 A=0
48 FOR I=1 TO 6
49 A =A +EXP((15-5#I)*R)*N(I)
50 NEXT I
51 RSTAR = LOG(A)/27.5
52 UEND
53 LPRINT USING "#####.#####";RSTAR
5 4 ~ R E T U R N
```

```
IRISH MORTALITY AND IRISH FERTILITY
    0.00642
IRISH MORTALITY ANO MEXICAN FERTILITY
    0.03272
mEXICAN MORTALITY AND IRISH FERTILITY
    0.00748
MEXICAN MORTALITY ANO MEXICAN FERTILITY
    0.03364
```

The effects of mortality and fertility are easily found:
Fertility: $0.03272-0.00642=0.02630$ at Irish mortality level.
Mortality: $0.03364-0.03272=0.00092$ at Mexican fertility level.
Interaction: $0.00642-0.03272-0.00748+0.03364=-0.00014$.
The interaction being 0.00014 , and small in comparison with the main effects, we conclude that fertility is about 25 times as important as mortality in explaining the difference in rate of increase between Ireland in 1926 and Mexico in 1962.
6. The derivative of the logarithm in Solution 3 is equal to the average departure of the age of childbearing from $27 \frac{1}{2}$, which is usually 2 or 3 years. Dividing this by $27 \frac{1}{2}$ gives a number of the order of 0.1 , so we gain about one decimal place per iteration.
7. Since $r$ is not the variable of integration in Solution 2 we can differentiate under the integral sign to find

$$
\begin{aligned}
\psi^{\prime}(r) & =-\int x e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x \\
\psi^{\prime \prime}(r) & =\int x^{2} e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x
\end{aligned}
$$

Since both integrands are positive, $\psi^{\prime}(r)<0$ and $\psi^{\prime \prime}(r)>0$.

## 8.


9. The equation may be written $\psi(r)=1$. From Solution $7 \psi^{\prime}(r)$ is negative for all $r$, which is to say that $\psi(r)$ is always decreasing. Such a function can pass only once through any real number, and in particular it can pass only once through unity. Hence $\psi(r)=1$ can have only one real root.
10. If the age-specific birth rate for women aged $x$ to $x+d x$ is $m(x)$, then the proportion of births to women 30 and over is

$$
{ }_{\beta-30} B_{30}=\frac{\int_{30}^{\beta} e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x}{\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x},
$$

where $\alpha$ is the lowest age of reproduction and $\beta$ is the highest. The denominator here is equal to unity by virtue of the definition of $r$, the intrinsic rate of natural increase. All the formulas of the preceding questions apply as long as we replace $l(x)$ by $l(x) m(x)$, known as the net maternity function, so none of the algebra needs to be done over again. Since the range of ages of childbearing is small compared with that of the population as a whole the declining exponential of equation (2), in Solution 29, Ch. III, will now have a much less steep slope. For instance the mean age of those women bearing children after 30 might be 33 , and the mean age of all women bearing children might be 25 ; the principal factor in the expression corresponding to (2) will be $e^{-8 r}$.

The result of Question 29, Ch. III, is more general yet. If $m(x)$ be interpreted as the proportion of the population aged $x$ to $x+d x$ in the labor force, and $\alpha$ and $\beta$ the lower and upper limits of the range of working ages, then all the results apply once again.
11. Dividing by

$$
R_{0}=\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} l(x) m(x) d x,
$$

taking logarithms and expanding the exponential under the integral sign to the term in $r^{2}$ gives

$$
\ln \int_{\alpha}^{\beta}\left(1-r x+\frac{r^{2} x^{2}}{2}\right) \frac{l(x) m(x) d x}{R_{0}}=-\ln R_{0},
$$

or

$$
\ln \left(1-\frac{r R_{1}}{R_{0}}+\frac{r^{2}}{2} \frac{R_{2}}{R_{0}}\right)=-\ln R_{0},
$$

where

$$
R_{i}=\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} x^{i} l(x) m(x) d x,
$$

or by Taylor's theorem applied on the left,

$$
-\frac{r R_{1}}{R_{0}}+\frac{r^{2}}{2} \frac{R_{2}}{R_{0}}-\left(\frac{R_{1}}{R_{0}}\right)^{2} \frac{r^{2}}{2}=-\ln R_{0}
$$

so that

$$
\frac{\sigma^{2}}{2} r^{2}-m r+\ln R_{0}=0
$$

12. Distinguish the higher mortality population by a star. Then

$$
\mu^{*}(x)=\mu(x)+\delta
$$

so

$$
l^{*}(x)=e^{-\delta x} l(x)
$$

and we can write

$$
\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} e^{-\left(r^{*}+\delta\right) x} l(x) m(x) d x=1 .
$$

Compare with the unstarred equation for the population with lower death rates, as given in (2). Because of the uniqueness of the real root, $r^{*}+\delta$ must be the same as $r$, so that $r^{*}=r-\delta$. If age-specific death rates are the same, an excess $\delta$ in death rates at all ages corresponds to a rate of increase lower by $\delta$. The crude birth rate and the age distribution are the same for the two populations; the crude death rate for the one of higher mortality is higher by exactly $\delta$.
13. If death rates drop by 0.001 at every age, 0.001 of the population will survive who would not otherwise survive. The population will be greater in the ratio 1.001 than it would otherwise be at all ages. Hence the age distribution is unchanged.
14. If the intrinsic rate is lower by absolute amount $\delta$ we have as the equation for $\delta$,

$$
\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} e^{-(r-\delta) x} l(x)(1-f) m(x) d x=1
$$

and remembering that $e^{\delta x}$ may be approximated by $1+\delta x$, and that the original equation is satisfied by $r$, we have after cancellation, ignoring the term in $f \delta \bar{x}$,

$$
(1-f) \delta \bar{x}-f \doteq 0,
$$

so that $\delta=f /[(1-f) \bar{x}]$. The intrinsic birth rate is diminished by the quantity $f /(1-f)$ divided by the mean age of childbearing in the stable population.
15. We need to solve for the fraction $f$ the equation

$$
\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} e^{-r x} e^{\delta x} l(x)(1-f) m(x) d x=1
$$

As before the equation reduces to $(1-f) \delta \bar{x}-f \doteq 0$, so $f=\delta \bar{x} /(1+\delta \bar{x})$. That is, the birth rates at all ages are lower by $100 \delta \bar{x} /(1+\delta \bar{x})$ percent.
16. At birth the probability of surviving to each age $x$ is $l(x)$, and the chance of childbearing between age $x$ and $x+d x$ is $m(x) d x$; the total of expected births is the integral

$$
\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} l(x) m(x) d x=R_{0}, \text { say. }
$$

When $R_{0}=1$ the population just replaces itself and the equation in (2) is satisfied by $r=0$.
17. The argument is similar to that used for a somewhat different purpose in the preceding questions. An increase equal to $r$ in the force of mortality lowers the survivorship from $l(x)$ to $e^{-r x} l(x)$; entering this last in place of $l(x)$ in $R_{0}$ of solution (16) makes $R_{0}$ equal to unity, according to (2).
18.

$$
\ln \left(\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{r x} f(x) d x\right)=\ln \left(1+r \bar{x}+\frac{r^{2}}{2!} \mu_{2}^{\prime}+\cdots\right),
$$

and expanding the logarithm gives

$$
\bar{x} r+\left(\mu_{2}^{\prime}-\bar{x}^{2}\right) \frac{r^{2}}{2!}+\cdots,
$$

so $\kappa_{1}$ may be identified with $\bar{x}$ and $\kappa_{2}$ with $\mu_{2}^{\prime}-\bar{x}^{2}$, i.e., with the variance.
19. If we divide both sides of the characteristic equation in (2) by $R_{0}$, take logarithms, and change signs, we have on the right the cumulantgenerating function of the net maternity function, and on the left the logarithm of $R_{0}$ :

$$
\ln R_{0}=\kappa_{1} r-\frac{\kappa_{2} r^{2}}{2!}+\frac{\kappa_{3} r^{3}}{3!}+\cdots
$$

where $\kappa_{i}$ is the $i$ th cumulant of the net maternity function. Hence $T=\ln R_{0} / r$ is given by this series divided by $r$ :

$$
T=\kappa_{1}-\frac{\kappa_{2} r}{2!}+\frac{\kappa_{3} r^{2}}{3!}+\cdots
$$

20. The mean age of childbearing in the stationary population is $\kappa_{1}$. The mean age of childbearing in the stable population is

$$
\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} x e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x,
$$

and the logarithm of this is the cumulant-generating function of $x l(x) m(x)$. It can be shown that this series starts with $\kappa_{1}-\kappa_{2} r$. The average of this and $\kappa_{1}$ is $\kappa_{1}-\left(\kappa_{2} r\right) / 2$ !, the first two terms in the expression for $T$ above.
21. Most populations show a length of generation for females between 25 and 33 years. (In some 800 populations for which the calculation was made only about 1 percent fell outside this range.) Using $r=\ln R_{0} / T$ shows that $r$ must be above $\ln R_{0} / 33$ and below $\ln R_{0} / 25$, i.e.,

$$
0.03 \ln R_{0}<r<0.04 \ln R_{0} .
$$

22. To find this one has to solve two equations and take the difference of their results. One equation is

$$
\int_{\alpha}^{35} e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x+\frac{3}{4} \int_{35}^{\beta} e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x=1,
$$

which will give a value of $r$ somewhat lower than the root of

$$
\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x=1 .
$$

A first approximation to the solution is $r-g / 4 \kappa_{1}$, where $g$ is the fraction of fertility that occurs over age 35 .
23. Using the exact relation $r=\ln R_{0} / T$ makes the result obvious. It is also obvious from a plot of the expression

$$
\psi(r)=\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} e^{-r x} l(x) m(x) d x
$$

as a function of $r ; R_{0}$ appears as the intercept $\psi(0)$ on the ordinate, and $r$ is the abscissa of the intersection of $\psi(r)$ with the horizontal line unit distance above the origin.
24. The characteristic equation in this special case is

$$
e^{-23 r} l(23)+e^{-30 r} l(30)=1
$$

To solve multiply both sides by $e^{25 r}$, take logarithms and divide by 25 . The resultant iterative formula is

$$
r^{*}=\frac{1}{25} \ln \left(0.95 e^{2 r}+0.93 e^{-5 r}\right),
$$

and the successive iterates are $0,0.02525,0.02393,0.02399$, the last being correct to five places.
25. Dividing the characteristic equation by $R_{0}$ and taking the logarithm generates the cumulants of the net maternity function on the right, so we have as the equivalent to the equation (2):

$$
r \kappa_{1}-\frac{r^{2}}{2!} \kappa_{2}+\frac{r^{3}}{3!} \kappa_{3}+\cdots=\ln R_{0} .
$$

If all cumulants beyond the second are zero we have

$$
\frac{r^{2}}{2!} \kappa_{2}-r \kappa_{1}+\ln R_{0}=0
$$

This is the same result as would be obtained by fitting a normal curve to the net maternity function $l(x) m(x)$ in (2).
26. Call the expression on the left in Solution $25 f(r)$. The function $f(r)$ will help find the derivative of $r$ with respect to the mean $\kappa_{1}$, using the theory of implicit functions. The total differential of the function is

$$
d f=\frac{\partial f}{\partial r} d r+\frac{\partial f}{\partial \kappa_{1}} d \kappa_{1}=0
$$

in which we can solve for the differential $d \kappa_{1} / d r$ as a ratio of partials:

$$
\frac{d r}{d \kappa_{1}}=-\frac{\partial f}{\partial \kappa_{1}} / \frac{\partial f}{\partial r},
$$

or in the particular case of Solution 25

$$
\frac{d r}{d \kappa_{1}}=-(-r) /\left(r \kappa_{2}-\kappa_{1}\right)=\frac{r}{r \kappa_{2}-\kappa_{1}} .
$$

A decrease of 1 year in $\kappa_{1}$ increases $r$ by $r /\left(r \kappa_{2}-\kappa_{1}\right)$. If $\kappa_{2}=40$ and $\kappa_{1}$ is 27 , then we have

| $r$ | $\frac{r}{r \kappa_{2}-\kappa_{1}}=\frac{r}{40 r-27}$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| 0.00 | 0.00000 |
| 0.01 | -0.00038 |
| 0.02 | -0.00076 |
| 0.03 | -0.00116 |
| 0.04 | -0.00157 |

produced by the very simple program:

```
10 FOR R = O TO . }04\mathrm{ STEP . }0
20 CHANCE = R/(40%R-27)
30 LPRINT USING "###, H#";R;
40 LPRINT USING "#####.######";CHANGE
50 NEXT R
```

    \(0.00 \quad 0.000000\)
    \(0.01-0.00038\)
    \(0.02-0.00076\)
    \(0.03-0.00116\)
    \(0.04 \quad-0.00157\)
    Evidently age of childbearing makes no difference if the rate of increase is zero, and even with the most rapid possible rate of increase, having children a year younger will only raise the rate by about $1 \frac{1}{2}$ points per thousand population.
27. A functional iteration for $r$ is

$$
r^{*}=\frac{\ln R_{0}}{\kappa_{1}-\kappa_{2} r / 2}
$$

Solving this for $\kappa_{1}=26 \frac{1}{2}$ and $27 \frac{1}{2}$, with $\kappa_{2}=40$ and various values of $R_{0}$ gives the answer. For instance, with $R_{0}=2.3$ we have after one iteration,

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { with } \kappa_{1}=26 \frac{1}{2}, & r=0.03143, \\
\text { with } \kappa_{1}=27 \frac{1}{2}, & r=0.03029,
\end{array}
$$

a difference of 0.00114 , against the -0.00116 shown above. For complicated derivatives this technique of arithmetical checking of algebra is indispensable.
28. $1 /(\mu+r)$ is the mean age at death in the increasing population and $1 / \mu$ is the age at which an individual expects to die. The difference can be large. If $r=0.03$ and $\mu=0.015$, then we have $1 /(0.03+0.015)=22.2$ years in the population and $1 / 0.015=66.7$ years for the individual.
29. In a stable population the number of persons at age $a$, per one of the total population, is $b e^{-r a l}(a)$, so the integral of this quantity over all ages must be unity, and hence

$$
b=\frac{1}{\int_{0}^{\omega} e^{-r a l(a) d a}} .
$$

The population whose death rates are higher by $\delta$ at all ages will have

$$
l^{*}(a)=\exp \left(\int_{0}^{a}-(\mu(x)+\delta) d x\right)=e^{-\delta a l(a)}
$$

and its $r^{*}$ was stated to be $r-\delta$. So we have for the birth rate of the highermortality population

$$
\begin{aligned}
b^{*}=\frac{1}{\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r^{*} a} l(a) d a} & =\frac{1}{\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-(r-\delta) a} e^{-\delta a} l(a) d a} \\
& =\frac{1}{\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r a} l(a) d a}=b
\end{aligned}
$$

Such a result is possible because the special kind of difference in mortality ( $\delta$, the same quantity for all ages) does not affect the age distribution. If two populations have the same age distribution and the same age-specific birth rates, then they have the same crude or overall birth rate.
30. The problem is to find $r^{*}$ given

$$
\begin{aligned}
b^{*} & =\frac{1}{\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r^{+} a} e^{-\delta a} l(a) d a} \\
& =\frac{1}{\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-\left(r^{*}+\delta\right) a} l(a) d a}=b .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $b$ is the reciprocal of $\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r a l}(a) d a$ this shows that

$$
\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-\left(r^{*}+\delta\right) a} l(a) d a=\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r a l(a) d a .}
$$

But because $\int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-r a l}(a) d a$ is a monotonic function of $r$ it can have only one root in $r$ when equated to a constant. From this uniqueness it follows that the two integrals can only be equal if $r^{*}+\delta=r$, and hence $r^{*}=r-\delta$.
31. Call the initial common rate of increase $r$, the two survivorships $l^{*}(a)$ and $l(a)$, the two birth rates $b^{*}$ and $b$. Then the initial crude death rate is

$$
(c d r)_{0}=\left(\left(b^{*}-r\right)+(b-r)\right) / 2
$$

If the procedure lowers mortality by $\varepsilon$ uniformly at all ages for the starred subpopulation it will increase its $r$ to $r+\varepsilon$, and will have no effect on its crude birth rate $b^{*}$. The population that results at time $t$ will have a weight of $e^{e t}$ for the starred subpopulation and unity for the other, so its crude death rate will be

$$
(\mathrm{cdr})_{t}=\left(e^{t t}\left(b^{*}-r-\varepsilon\right)+(b-r)\right) /\left(e^{e t}+1\right)
$$

Then (cdr) will be greater than (cdr) if and only if

$$
\frac{e^{\varepsilon t}\left(b^{*}-r-\varepsilon\right)+(b-r)}{e^{t t}+1}>\frac{b^{*}-r+(b-r)}{2} .
$$

Ultimately as $t$ becomes large, the condition becomes $\varepsilon<\left(b^{*}-b\right) / 2$ which is the same as

$$
\varepsilon<\frac{\left(b^{*}-r\right)-(b-r)}{2}
$$

Expressed in words, the result is that sooner or later the death rate will rise as a result of the improvement in mortality if the improvement is of amount less than half of the initial difference in death rates. Strictly speaking, these statements should be expressed in the language of comparative statics, but that would make the exposition tedious.
32. The numerator of the derivative $s^{\prime}(t)$ is equal to

$$
(\omega(t)+1)\left(\omega^{\prime}(t) a\right)-(\omega(t) a+1)\left(\omega^{\prime}(t)\right)=\omega^{\prime}(t)(a-1)<0,
$$

since $a<1$, and the denominator, a square, is positive. Hence $s^{\prime}(t)$ is negative, so $s(t)$ must be a decreasing function of $t$.

## CHAPTER V

## Projection and Forecasting

Statistical data regarding population, like all other data, refer to the past; action and policy require knowledge of the future. What counts is not what the population has been, but what it will be. The cost of an annuity taken out today depends on future not on past mortality. Whatever continuities exist between past and future must be discovered and exploited if decisions regarding the future are to be soundly based, from the price of an annuity to the location of a retail store.

The questions in this chapter concern continuities between past and future. Among other matters we search for functions of past observations that are invariant with time, starting with the simplest cases. Techniques are most often illustrated with fixed parameters, using models that in other respects as well are less elaborate than those applied in professional practice.

### 5.1. Problems

### 5.1.1. Extrapolation of Population Totals

1. A curve of the form $P_{t}=P_{0} e^{r t}$ has constant ratios in successive periods; one of the form $P_{t}=P_{0}+a t$ has constant differences. Prove these statements.
2. What function of the population at successive moments of time is constant in the case of the hyperbola $P_{t}=P_{0} /\left(t_{e}-t\right)$ ?
3. What function of the population at successive moments is constant for the logistic $P_{t}=a /\left(1+e^{-r\left(t-t_{0}\right)}\right)$ ?
4. If $P_{1}, P_{2}$, and $P_{3}$ are the populations of an area at three equidistant time periods; prove that the ultimate population $\alpha$ on the logistic through them is given by

$$
\alpha=\frac{\frac{1}{P_{1}}+\frac{1}{P_{3}}-\frac{2}{P_{2}}}{\frac{1}{P_{1} P_{3}}-\frac{1}{P_{2}^{2}}}
$$

where numerator and denominator are both supposed positive.
5. For the U.S. census of 1810 the population was approximately 7290 ; that of $1860,30,443$; that of $1910,91,661$, all in thousands. Find the asymptote $\alpha$ from the preceding formula.
6. Prove that the $n$th finite difference of a curve of the $n$th degree is constant.
7. Following are the counts of population in the United States at successive censuses:

| 1940 | 132 | 1960 | 179 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1950 | 151 | 1970 | 203 |

Difference the table, and calculate the value for 1980 by linear, quadratic, and cubic polynomials, using successive differences. Investigate the accuracy of these several methods.
8. Continue the experiment with the birth series for the United States by calendar yearrs from 1962 to 1978 (Statistical Abstracts, 1980, p. 61). Try cubic, quadratic, and linear projections, as well as assuming no change from the preceding 5 -year amount. Compare the accuracy of these several "methods."
9. Using only the expression of Problem 4, and supposing a population to be counted (in thousands) for
. 1940 at 139,288
1950 at 156,102
1960 at 171,966
calculate the ultimate population on the logistic, $\alpha$ of Problem 4, and also the population of 1970, 1980, 1990, and 2000.
10. The populations at time $t-2, t-1$, and $t$ are each independently estimated with variance $\sigma^{2}$. What is the variance of the projection to time $t+n$ if the fitting is: (a) a straight line; (b) a quadratic?
11. For the U.S. series of censuses from 1790 to 1980 , as given in the current Statistical Abstract, work out estimates that can be compared census by census, based on:
(1) Accepting the previous census figure for this census-S (for same).
(2) Arithmetic progression-A.
(3) Quadratic extrapolation- $Q$.
(4) Cubic extrapolation-C.
(5) Geometric progression- $G$.
(6) Logistic fit-L.
(7) Hyperbola or harmonic progression-H.
12. Fibonacci described a rabbit population such that each pair bears a pair when it is 1 month old and another pair when it is 2 months old. Starting with one pair, this gives rise to the series $1,1,2,3,5,8, \ldots$ State the general term of the series and find its ultimate stable rate of increase. How must the model be elaborated if it is to apply to a human population?
13. One would like to use the theory of the demographic transition to forecast population. Suppose a population with a high birth rate and a death rate equal to its birth rate, then a decline in the death rate followed by a decline in the birth rate, until the stationary condition resumes. Show that the increase over the transition is $e^{4}$, where $A$ is the sum of the (crude) birth rates over the transition minus the sum of the death rates.
14. If the birth and death rates are identical decreasing curves, starting together and each falling by the amount $K$, with the death rates preceding the birth rates by $L$ years, then the ratio of increase over the transition is $e^{K L}$. How does the increase depend on the lag $L$ ?

### 5.1.2. Matrix Technique

15. Draw up a matrix $S$ that will project the part initially alive of one sex of a population. What power of the matrix consists wholly of zeros? Interpret this nilpotent property against what you know of the lifetimes of people already alive at the time of the projection.
16. What matrix will serve to project births and hence the youngest age group of the population?

### 5.1.3. Analysis of the Projection Matrix

17. The United States female projection matrix for ages 0-44 in 15-year age groups with 1965 age-specific birth and death rates is

$$
\mathbf{M}=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
0.4271 & 0.8498 & 0.1273 \\
0.9924 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0.9826 & 0
\end{array}\right]
$$

The age distribution for females for 1965 is $0-14,29,415 ; 15-29,20,886 ; 30-44$, 18,040; Total, 68,341, all in thousands. Project to 1980 and 1995.
18. Square the matrix in Problem 17 to find the projection matrix that will carry the population over 30 years. Premultiply the 1965 vector by this square matrix, and see whether you obtain the same result for 1995 as in Problem 17.
19. The right-hand stable vector $P$ of the matrix $M$ satisfies the equation $\mathbf{M P}=\lambda \mathbf{P}$, where $\lambda$ is a suitable scalar. Express this condition in words.
20. Take the matrix in Problem 17 to its 32 nd and 33 rd powers, and find how fast the population is increasing per year after 32 periods of 15 years.
21. What is the characteristic equation for the U.S. projection matrix in Problem 17?
22. What is the positive root of the preceding equation?
23. Using the derivative $d \lambda^{*} / d \lambda$ find how fast the preceding functional iteration ought to converge in theory.
24. Compare the above functional iteration with that obtained by the Newton-Raphson procedure.
25. Prove that the matrix of Problem 17 satisfies its characteristic equation.
26. Following is the projection matrix in 15-year age groups for Norway females in 1964:

$$
\mathbf{M}=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
0.3476 & 0.8917 & 0.1577 \\
0.9952 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0.9909 & 0
\end{array}\right]
$$

By projection of an arbitrary vector find the ultimate stable ratio of population growth that it implies, as well as the corresponding stable age distribution; set out the characteristic equation and solve for the three roots.
27. What is the net reproduction rate $R_{0}$ of the regime of mortality and fertility contained in the matrix of Problem 26?
28. What is the mean age of childbearing or length of gencration $T$ in the matrix of Problem 26?
29. How would one reduce to zero the rate of increase of the regime of Problem 26 without changing either the mortality rates or the relative fertility at different ages, i.e., by changing fertility at all ages in proportion?
30. Supposing that the matrix of Problem 26 holds for 1964 to 1994, and that the stationary matrix of Problem 29 applies in the year 1994 and subsequently, given that the initial distribution in the three age groups is 470 , 387, 352 (total, 1209), track out the female population under age 45 until the end of the 21st century.
31. In a heterogeneous population, show that a forecast made for the whole population at its average initial rates gives a smaller result than the total of the projections of subpopulations each at its own initial rate of increase. Use the matrix of Problem 26, adding and subtracting 0.1 to each element of the first row to obtain the regimes for the subpopulations.
32. For the five life tables of the United States at successive decades, call the first the standard life table, say $l_{s}(x)$, transform to logits,

$$
Y_{x}=\frac{1}{2} \ln \left(\frac{1-l_{x}}{l_{x}}\right),
$$

then fit the first, taken as a standard, to each of the last four tables, expressing their logits as

$$
Y_{x}=\alpha_{i}+\beta_{i} Y_{s x}, \quad i=2,3,4,5 .
$$

Examine the feasibility of projecting the $\alpha$ and $\beta$ and so obtaining $Y_{x}$ pertaining to the future from which survivorships can be calculated.

### 5.1.4. Breakdown by Sex and Other Attributes

33. Expand the matrix $\mathbf{M}=\mathbf{S}+\mathbf{B}$ to project the two sexes separately with mixed dominance, supposing $s$ boys to each girl baby at each age of childbearing. Let the fraction $D$ of each birth come from the mother and $1-D$ from the father.
34. Sketch out the block matrix projecting the population according to rural and urban residence, age, and sex.
35. From the form of the female dominant matrix in Problem 33, show that the initial number of males, as well as their mortality rates, make no difference to the ultimate rate of increase of the population.

### 5.2. Solutions

1. If $P_{t}=P_{0} e^{r t}$ and $P_{t+1}=P_{0} e^{r(t+1)}$, then by division $P_{t+1} / P_{t}=e^{r}$, and this ratio of successive terms is not a function of time $t$, i.e., it is a constant in the meaning of the question. Similarly for $P_{t}=P_{0}+a t$ and $P_{t+1}=P_{0}$ $+a(t+1)$; subtraction gives $P_{t+1}-P_{t}=a$, so the difference of successive terms is a constant.
2. The difference of the reciprocals of the $t$ th and $(t+1)$ th terms is equal to $1 / P_{0}$, which is independent of time.
3. The reciprocal $1 / P_{t}$ is $\left(1+e^{-r(t-t o)}\right) / a$, and subtracting this from the corresponding value for $1 / P_{t+1}$ gives $e^{-r\left(t-t_{0}\right)}\left(e^{-r}-1\right) / a$. The difference of reciprocals $1 / P_{t+2}-1 / P_{t+1}$ is the same, but with $t+1$ entered in place of $t$. Dividing the first difference by the second gives

$$
\frac{\frac{1}{P_{t+1}}-\frac{1}{P_{t}}}{\frac{1}{P_{t+2}}-\frac{1}{P_{t+1}}}=e^{r},
$$

which is constant.
4. The problem is to eliminate the constants $b$ and $r$ among the equations

$$
P_{t}=\frac{\alpha}{1+b e^{-r}}, \quad t=-1,0,1,
$$

where the values of $t$ are chosen for ease in algebraic manipulation. Taking reciprocals, and then eliminating $b$ and $r$ gives the required value. Note that by no means all triplets of points can be fitted with a real logistic.
5. 197 million.
6. If the curve is of the form $a t^{n}+b t^{n-1} \ldots$, then the first difference is

$$
a(t+1)^{n}+b(t+1)^{n-1}+\cdots-a t^{n}-b t^{n-1}-\cdots=n a t^{n-1}+\cdots
$$

which is of degree lower by one than the original function. By successive differencing in this way it turns out that the $n$th difference is $n!a$, a constant.
7. Differencing out the table and continuing it down as though some order of differences is constant is the general approach. Projection with a cubic curve, i.e., supposing third differences constant, permits building up successive later values of the curve by adding: $-13-4=-17 ;-17+24=7$; $7+203=210$, etc.

|  | Observed | $\Delta$ | $\Delta^{2}$ | $\Delta^{3}$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1940 | 132 | 19 |  |  |
| 1950 | 151 | 9 | 9 |  |
| 1960 | 179 | 28 | -4 | -13 |
| 1970 | 203 | 24 | -17 | -13 |
| 1980 | Calculated | 7 |  |  |

Similarly with a quadratic curve, i.e., supposing second differences constant at -4 gives 223 million, and with a straight line, i.c., supposing first differences constant at 24 gives 227 million.

Notice that the 1980 census count was 226.5 million, so the straight-line projection from 1960 and 1970 alone was more accurate than the quadratic or cubic using more data. Such an outcome is not unusual-the more elaborate the method the poorer the results unless the elaboration is appropriate.

Alternatively, if fourth differences are zero, in symbolic terms $\Delta^{4}=0$, and if $E$ is the shift operator, we have by the binomial theorem,

$$
\Delta^{4}=(E-1)^{4}=E^{4}-4 E^{3}+6 E^{2}-4 E+1=0
$$

or in terms of our numbers, for a cubic fitting in millions,

$$
P_{1980}=4 P_{1970}-6 P_{1960}+4 P_{1950}-P_{1940}=210 .
$$

For a quadratic fitting,

$$
P_{1980}=3 P_{1970}-3 P_{1960}+P_{1950}=223,
$$

and for a linear fitting,

$$
P_{1980}=2 P_{1970}-P_{1960}=227 .
$$

Calculation by the same three formulas for the series of 20 censuses since 1790 gives a mean absolute error in millions of
8.06 for the cubic,
4.00 for the quadratic,
2.89 for the straight line.

With geometric rather than arithmetic series, i.e., taking logarithms and subsequently exponentiating, we find
10.56 for the cubic,
5.35 for the quadratic,
3.16 for the straight line.

As an experiment on short-term forecasts, one can take the 20 published estimates of U.S. population at midyear 1957 to 1976. The mean errors, again in millions, are

|  | Arithmetic | Geometric |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Cubic | 0.369 | 0.377 |
| Quadratic | 0.218 | 0.221 |
| Linear | 0.139 | 0.156 |

As in the 10 -year forecasts, the linear shows less than half the error of the cubic. The examples warn us against the gratuitous errors introduced by inappropriate elaboration.
8. We find, in thousands of births, the mean error:

|  | Arithmetic | Geometric |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Cubic | 240 | 226 |
| Quadratic | 156 | 148 |
| Linear | 114 | 112 |
| No change from preceding year | 100 | 100 |

The "no change" estimate is the best, followed by the linear. This time the geometric wins by a small margin over the arithmetic.
9. From the formula in Question 4 we have $\alpha=256,427$, and

| 1970 | 186,446 | 1990 | 210,323 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1980 | 199,269 | 2000 | 219,634 |

10. The arithmetic projection to time $t+n$ based on time $t-1$ and $t$ may be written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{t+n} & =P_{t}+n\left(P_{t}-P_{t-1}\right)=(n+1) P_{t}-n P_{t-1}, \\
\operatorname{Var} P_{t+n} & =(n+1)^{2} \operatorname{Var} P_{t}+n^{2} \operatorname{Var} P_{t-1},
\end{aligned}
$$

supposing independence of errors. Hence

$$
\operatorname{Var} P_{t+n}=\left(2 n^{2}+2 n+1\right) \sigma^{2}
$$

For a quadratic we have as earlier:

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{t+n}= & E^{n+2} P_{t-2}=(\mathrm{I}+\Delta)^{n+2} P_{t-2} \\
= & P_{t-2}+(n+2)\left(P_{t-1}-P_{t-2}\right) \\
& +\frac{(n+2)(n+1)}{2!}\left(P_{t}-2 P_{t-1}+P_{t-2}\right) \\
= & P_{t}\left(\frac{(n+2)(n+1)}{2}\right)-P_{t-1}((n+2)(n))+P_{t-2}\left(\frac{(n+1) n}{2}\right), \\
\operatorname{Var}\left(P_{t+n}\right)= & \left(\frac{(n+2)^{2}(n+1)^{2}}{2^{2}}+(n+2)^{2} n^{2}+\frac{(n+1)^{2} n^{2}}{2^{2}}\right) \sigma^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

11. The table shows departures of the seven estimates from the census figure, and the standard error of these departures. Notice that the cubic is the second worst, the arithmetic is the best, the hyperbolic better than the more reasonable logistic.

|  | Departures |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Year | $S$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $A$ | $Q$ | $C$ | $G$ | $L$ | $H$ |
| 1820 | -2.40 | -0.50 | 0.00 | 3.00 | 0.18 | 0.18 | 1.62 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1830 | -3.30 | -0.90 | -0.40 | -0.40 | -0.10 | -0.39 | 1.50 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1840 | -4.20 | -0.90 | 0.00 | 0.40 | 0.23 | 0.42 | 2.56 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1850 | -6.10 | -1.90 | -1.00 | -1.00 | -0.53 | -0.92 | 2.16 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1860 | -8.20 | -2.10 | -0.20 | 0.80 | 0.08 | 1.19 | 4.67 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1870 | -8.40 | -0.20 | 1.90 | 2.10 | 2.70 | 2.56 | 8.77 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1880 | -10.40 | -2.00 | -1.80 | -3.70 | 0.25 | -2.83 | 4.14 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1890 | -12.70 | -2.30 | -0.30 | 1.50 | 0.42 | 0.04 | 5.06 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1900 | -13.10 | -0.40 | 1.90 | 2.20 | 2.81 | 2.18 | 8.20 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1910 | -16.00 | -2.90 | -2.50 | -4.40 | -0.17 | -3.43 | 3.99 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1920 | -13.70 | 2.30 | 5.20 | 7.70 | 5.67 | 5.92 | 10.83 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1930 | -17.10 | -3.40 | -5.70 | -10.90 | -1.36 | -6.43 | 1.39 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1940 | -8.90 | 8.20 | 11.60 | 17.30 | 10.97 | 12.99 | 14.80 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1950 | -19.60 | -10.70 | -18.90 | -30.50 | -10.05 | -15.49 | -9.31 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1960 | -28.00 | -8.40 | 2.30 | 21.20 | -5.48 | 26.83 | -1.55 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1970 | -23.90 | 4.10 | 12.50 | 10.20 | 9.28 | 19.31 | 16.82 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1980 | -18.80 | 5.10 | 1.00 | -11.50 | 8.29 | 0.01 | 12.45 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| R.M.S. | 14.47 | 4.47 | 6.56 | 11.24 | 5.18 | 9.74 | 8.07 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

12. The general term is $B_{t}=B_{t-1}+B_{t-2}$, with time in months and $B_{t}$ the number of pairs born at time $t$. Dividing by $B_{t-1}$ gives

$$
\frac{B_{t}}{B_{t-1}}=1+\frac{B_{t-2}}{B_{t-1}} .
$$

At stability $B_{t} / B_{t-1}=B_{t-1} / B_{t-2}=R$, say. Then the equation is

$$
R=1+\frac{1}{R} \quad \text { or } \quad R^{2}-R-1=0
$$

so $R=(1 \pm \sqrt{5}) / 2$. The relevant root is then 1.618 .
Even easier than solving the quadratic is tracking out the curve by computer. Following is the program and output. Note that within eight cycles of projection the ratio is correct to three significant figures, and within ten is correct to four.

Extension to a human population requires only changing the unit from the month to the year or 5 -year period and increasing the number of times of reproduction from 2 months to six or seven 5 -year periods.

```
10 'TRACKING OUT THE FIBONACCI RABBITS
20 DIM B(100),R(100)
30 B(0)=0
40 B(1)=1
S0 FOR I=1 T0`99
60 B(I+1)=8(I)+8(I-1)
70 R(I+1)=日(I+1)/B(I)
80 LPRINT I,B(I),R(I)
90 IF I<2 THEN GOTO 110
100 IF ABS(R(I)-R(I-1))<.0001 THEN STOP
110 NEXT I
```

| $I$ | $B(I)$ | $R(I)$ |
| ---: | ---: | :--- |
| 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 2 | 1 | 1 |
| 3 | 2 | 2 |
| 4 | 3 | 1.5 |
| 5 | 5 | 1.66667 |
| 6 | 8 | 1.6 |
| 7 | 13 | 1.625 |
| 8 | 21 | 1.61538 |
| 9 | 34 | 1.61905 |
| 10 | 55 | 1.61765 |
| 11 | 89 | 1.61818 |
| 12 | 144 | 1.61798 |
| 13 | 233 | 1.61806 |

13. In any year the ratio of increase is $e^{b(t)} / e^{d(t)}$, where $b$ and $d$ are the crude birth and death rates, respectively, and are taken as functions of time. Then if the transition starts at time $t_{0}$ and ends at time $t_{1}$, we have for the ratio of increase over $t_{0}$ to $t_{1}$,

$$
\text { Ratio }=\exp \left(\int_{t_{0}}^{t_{1}}(b(t)-d(t)) d t\right)=e^{A},
$$

where $A$ is as defined in the problem, and on a chart would be the area enclosed by the birth and death curves.
14. $d e^{K L} / d L=K e^{K L}$. The population ratio over the transition is directly proportional to $K$, the difference between initial and final birth (or death) rates, and to the exponential of the area enclosed by the birth and death curves.
15. The matrix is $n \times n$ in size, where $n=18$ for a population classified into 5 -year age groups and of which the last members die before age 90 ; it is $90 \times 90$ in size for 1 -year age intervals. The only non-zero elements are in the subdiagonal, and the $i$ th element of the $(i+1)$ th row is $L_{i+1} / L_{i}$, $i=1,2, \ldots$. The $n$th power of the matrix consists wholly of zeros, since the first power has zeros in its first row, the square has zeros in its first two rows, $\ldots$, the $(n-1)$ th power has zeros in its first $n-1$ rows. The $n$th
power of the matrix projects the initial population through $n$ time periods, and if no one lives to be as much as $n$ years old there can be no one living at time $n$.
16. The initial age distribution is $\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}}$, the projection after 5 years is $\mathbf{S P}_{\mathbf{0}}$, and so the exposure to the risk of childbearing over the 5 -year interval in the several ages is given by the vector

$$
\frac{5}{2}\left(\mathbf{P}_{0}+\mathbf{S} \mathbf{P}_{0}\right) .
$$

Call the (horizontal) vector of age-specific fertility rates $\mathbf{F}$. Then the expected births over the first 5 -year period are the scalar quantity,

$$
\frac{\mathbf{s}}{2} \mathbf{F}\left(\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}}+\mathbf{S} \mathbf{P}_{0}\right),
$$

and the survivors among these to the end of the period are the same multiplied by ${ }_{5} L_{0}$ :

$$
{ }_{2}^{5} \mathbf{F}(\mathbf{I}+\mathbf{S}) \mathbf{P}_{0}{ }_{5} L_{0} .
$$

The part of this that does not include $\mathbf{P}_{\mathbf{0}}$ is a horizontal vector that can be put into the first row of a matrix that has zeros in all other rows. If this matrix is called $\mathbf{B}$, then the complete projection matrix is $\mathbf{S}+\mathbf{B}$, where $\mathbf{S}$ has elements $L_{i+1} / L_{i}$ in its $i$ th row, and B's first row is the horizontal vector $\frac{5}{2} s_{0} \mathbf{F}(\boldsymbol{I}+\mathbf{S})$. We will write $\mathbf{S}+\mathbf{B}=\mathbf{M}$.
17. Multiplying to form $\mathbf{M P}_{0}$ and $\mathbf{M}^{\mathbf{2}} \mathbf{P}_{0}$ gives

| Age | 1980 | 1995 |
| ---: | :---: | :---: |
| $0-14$ | 32,609 | 41,346 |
| $15-29$ | 29,191 | 32,361 |
| $30-44$ | 20,523 | 28,683 |

The following program produces population projections and powers of matrices. Its current output shows projections for $1995(15) 2055$, and the first four powers of $M$. The program could be used in problems 17, 20, and 25.

[^1]```
170 FOR J=1 TO N
180 READ M(I,J)
190 MM (I,J)=M(I,J )
200 NEXT J
2 1 0 ~ N E X T ~ I ~ I
220 FOR I=1 TO N
230 READ P(I)
240 NEXT I
250 DATA .4271,.8498,.1273
260 DATA . 9924,0,0
270 DATA 0,.9826,0
280 DATA 29415,20886,18040
290 FOR I=1 TO N
300 V(I)=0
310 FOR K=1 TO N
320V(I)=V(I)+M(I,K)#p(K)
330 NEXT K
340 PRINT V(I);
350 NEXT I
360 PRINT
370 FOR I=1 TO N
380 P(I) = V(I)
390 NEXT I
4 0 0 ~ C = C + 1
410 IF C<E THEN GOTO 290
420 RETURN
4 3 0 ~ P R I N T ~
4 4 0 ~ P R I N T ~ " F O L L O U I N G ~ I S ~ P O U E R " ; O ; " O F ~ T H E ~ M A T R I X " ~
450 FOR I=1 TO N
4 6 0 ~ F O R ~ J = 1 ~ T O ~ N ~ N
470 PROD (I,J) =0
4 8 0 ~ F O R ~ K = 1 ~ T O ~ N ~
490 PROD(I ,J) =PROD (I,J ) +M(I,K)#MM (K,J)
500 NEXT K
510 PRINT MM(I,J);
520 NEXT J
530 PRINT
540 NEXT I
550 FOR J=1 TO N
560 FOR I=1 TO N
570 MM (I,J) =PROO(I,J)
S80 NEXT I,J
5 9 0 ~ D = 0 + 1
6 0 0 ~ I F ~ D < E ~ T H E N ~ G O T O ~ 4 3 0
601 END
32608.6 29191.4 20522.6
41346.5 32360.7 28683.5
48810.7 41032.3 31797.7
59764.1 48439.7 40318.3
71821.8 59309.9 47596.9
FOLLOUING IS POUER 1 OF THE MATRIX
    .4271 . 8498 . }127
    .9924 ○ 0
    0.9826 0
FOLLOUING IS POUER 2 OF THE MATRIX
    1.02576 .488035 .0543698
    .423854 . 843341 . 126333
    .975132 0 0
FOLLOUING IS POUER 3 OF THE MATRIX
    .922426 . 925111 . }13057
    1.01796 .484325 .0539566
    .416479 . 828667 . 124134
FOLLOUING IS POUER 4 OF THE MATRIX
    1.31205 . 912184 . 117425
    .915416 .91808 . 129586
    1.00025 .475898 .0530178
```

18. The associative law holds for matrices, so $\mathbf{M}^{2} \mathbf{P}_{0}$ is the same as $\mathbf{M}\left(\mathbf{M P}_{0}\right)$, and $\mathbf{M}^{\mathbf{2}} \mathbf{P}_{0}$ does in fact produce the numbers in Solution 17.
19. A stable age distribution is such that on projection it is preserved to within a constant factor.
20. Squaring five times to obtain $\mathbf{M}^{32}$, then multiplying by $\mathbf{M}$ gives $\mathbf{M}^{33}$. The ratio of any element of $\mathbf{M}^{33}$ to the corresponding element of $\mathbf{M}^{32}$ is an approximation to the 15 -year ratio of increase $\lambda$. It turns out that under such constant rates the population ultimately increases in the ratio $\lambda=$ 1.2093, in total and at every separate age, each 15 years. This is the stable or intrinsic ratio of increase.
21. The condition for consistency in the set of homogeneous equations $\mathbf{M P}=\lambda \mathbf{P}$ is that $\lambda$ take a certain value, that which satisfies the characteristic equation. The characteristic equation in $\lambda$ is the determinant $|\mathbf{M}-\lambda \mathbf{I}|$ equated to zero. Expanding by the rules for determinants we have

$$
\lambda^{3}-0.4271 \lambda^{2}-0.8433 \lambda-0.1241=0 .
$$

22. Separating $\lambda^{3}$, dividing by $\lambda$, then taking the square root, gives the functional iteration

$$
\lambda^{*}=\sqrt{0.4271 \lambda+0.8433+0.1241 / \lambda}
$$

Starting with $\lambda=1$ gives iterates $1.1809,1.2053,1.2087,1.2092$.
23. By numerical differentiation on a computer we find $d \lambda^{*} / d \lambda=0.06$ very nearly.
24. Newton-Raphson iteration in the equation $f(\lambda)=0$ is based on a Taylor expansion to the linear term:

$$
f\left(\lambda^{*}\right)=f(\lambda)+\left(\lambda^{*}-\lambda\right) f^{\prime}(\lambda)=0 .
$$

Solve for $\lambda^{*}$ to obtain

$$
\lambda^{*}=\lambda-\frac{f(\lambda)}{f^{\prime}(\lambda)}
$$

In our case

$$
\lambda^{*}=\lambda-\frac{\lambda^{3}-0.4271 \lambda^{2}-0.8433 \lambda-0.1241}{3 \lambda^{2}-0.8542 \lambda-0.8433}
$$

Iterates with the matrix of Problem 17 are 1, 1.3076, 1.2189, 1.2093. Convergence is slightly more rapid than in the method of Problem 22. (See Kellison (1975).)
25. The square matrix is

$$
\mathbf{M}^{2}=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
1.0258 & 0.4880 & 0.0544 \\
0.4239 & 0.8433 & 0.1263 \\
0.9751 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right]
$$

and the cube is

$$
\mathbf{M}^{3}=\left[\begin{array}{lll}
0.9224 & 0.9251 & 0.1306 \\
1.0180 & 0.4843 & 0.0540 \\
0.4165 & 0.8287 & 0.1241
\end{array}\right] .
$$

Any corresponding set of elements satisfies the characteristic equation. For instance, the first elements of the first row entered in the equation give

$$
0.9224-(0.4271)(1.0258)-(0.8433)(0.4271)-0.1241=0 .
$$

26. The stable ratio is 1.1973 ; the intrinsic rate is $\frac{1}{15}$ of the logarithm of this or 0.0120 ; the stable age distribution to within an arbitrary constant is 23.25 for age $0-14 ; 19.33$ for age $15-29 ; 16.00$ for age $30-44$. The characteristic equation is $\lambda^{3}-0.3476 \lambda^{2}-0.8874 \lambda-0.1555=0$, and its three roots are 1.1973, -0.6499 , and -0.1998 .
27. The expected number of girl children to a girl just born is the sum of the coefficients of the last three terms of the characteristic equation of Solution 26 with sign reversed, i.e., $R_{0}=0.3476+0.8874+0.1555=$ 1.3905.
28. If $T$ is defined by $e^{r T}=R_{0}$, then

$$
T=\frac{\ln R_{0}}{r}=\frac{\ln (1.3905)}{0.0120}=27.47 \text { years. }
$$

29. By dividing each element of the first row by the net reproduction rate $R_{0}=1.3905$.
30. 
```
10 'PROGRAM FOR PROJECTING PGPULATION IN
20 THREE AGE GROUPS, STARTING WITH THE REGIME OF NORWAY
30 'FEMALES FOR 1964, THEN CONTINUING FROM 1994 UITH
40 'DROP TO REPI.ACEMENT.
5 0 ~ ' F I R S T ~ R E A D ~ I N ~ T H E ~ M A T R I X ~ A N O ~ V E R T I C A L ~ V E C T O R ~
60 FOR I=1 TO 3
70 FOR J=1 TO 3
80 READ M(I,J)
90 NEXT J
100 NEXT I
110 DATA . 3476,.8917,.1577,.9952,,,,.9909,
120 P(1)=470:P(2)=387:P(3)=352
130 LPRINT 15*C+1979,
140 'THEN PREMULTIPLY THE AGE VECTOR BY THE MATPIX
150 FOR I =1 TO 3
160 FDR J=1 TO 3
170 P1(I)=P1(I)+m(I,J) मP(J)
180 NEXT J
190 'PRINT OUT THE RESULT
200 LPRINT USING "##########,###";P1(I),
210T=T+P1(I)
220 NEXT I
230 LPRINT USING "##########, ###";
240 FOR I=1 TO 3
250 P(I) =P1 (I)
260 \rho1 (I) =0
270 NEXT I
280 T=0
290 C=C +1
```

300 IF Cく3 THEN COTO 130
310 'NOW LOWER THE MATRIX THAT IS TO EE APPLIED
320 'AFTER 1994 UHEN C=2
330 FOR J=1 TO 3
340 IF $C=3$ THEN $M(1, J)=M(1, J) / 1,3905$
350 NEXT J
360 IF C<g THEN GOTO 130
370 'THE REQUIRED OUTPUT FOLLOWS:

| 1979 | 564 | 468 | 383 | 1,415 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1994 | 674 | 561 | 463 | 1,698 |
| 2009 | 808 | 670 | 556 | 2,034 |
| 2024 | 695 | 804 | 664 | 2,163 |
| 2039 | 765 | 692 | 797 | 2,253 |
| 2054 | 725 | 761 | 685 | 2,171 |
| 2069 | 747 | 721 | 754 | 2,222 |
| 2084 | 735 | 743 | 715 | 2,193 |
| 2099 | 741 | 731 | 737 | 2,209 |

31. We take it that one population is heterogeneous in that half has fertility factors 0.1 less and the other 0.1 more than the average of Norway 1964. If the population is projected to 2084 with the original matrix the result, as shown in the table below, is 5003 thousand. The alternative of projecting with lower fertility gives 1856 by 2084; with higher fertility, 11,353. If half the population grows with the low and half with the high we would have $1856 / 2+11,353 / 2=6,604$, much more than the 5003 of the homogeneous projection.

|  | -15 | $15-29$ | $30-44$ | Total |
| ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| 1979 | 564 | 468 | 383 | 1,415 |
| 1994 | 674 | 561 | 463 | 1,698 |
| 2009 | 808 | 670 | 556 | 2,034 |
| 2024 | 966 | 804 | 664 | 2,434 |
| 2039 | 1,157 | 962 | 797 | 2,916 |
| 2054 | 1,385 | 1,152 | 953 | 3,490 |
| 2069 | 1,659 | 1,379 | 1,141 | 4,179 |
| 2084 | 1,986 | 1,651 | 1,366 | 5,003 |
| -0.1 |  |  |  |  |
| 1979 | 443 | 468 | 383 | 1,294 |
| 1994 | 502 | 441 | 463 | 1,407 |
| 2009 | 500 | 500 | 437 | 1,437 |
| 2024 | 545 | 498 | 495 | 1,538 |
| 2039 | 558 | 542 | 493 | 1,593 |
| 2054 | 596 | 555 | 537 | 1,688 |
| 2069 | 618 | 593 | 550 | 1,760 |
| 2084 | 654 | 615 | 587 | 1,856 |

continued

|  | -15 | $15-29$ | $30-44$ | Total |
| ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| +0.1 |  |  |  |  |
| 1979 | 685 | 468 | 383 | 1,536 |
| 1994 | 869 | 682 | 463 | 2,014 |
| 2009 | 1,184 | 865 | 675 | 2,725 |
| 2024 | 1,562 | 1,179 | 857 | 3,598 |
| 2039 | 2,089 | 1,555 | 1,168 | 4,812 |
| 2054 | 2,778 | 2,079 | 1,540 | 6,397 |
| 2069 | 3,702 | 2,764 | 2,060 | 8,527 |
| 2084 | 4,929 | 3,684 | 2,739 | 11,353 |
|  | Average |  | $\ddots$ |  |
| 1979 | 1,415 | 1,294 | 1,536 | 1,415 |
| 1994 | 1,698 | 1,406 | 2,014 | 1,710 |
| 2009 | 2,034 | 1,436 | 2,724 | 2,080 |
| 2024 | 2,434 | 1,537 | 3,598 | 2,567 |
| 2039 | 2,915 | 1,592 | 4,811 | 3,202 |
| 2054 | 3,490 | 1,687 | 6,397 | 4,042 |
| 2069 | 4,179 | 1,760 | 8,526 | 5,143 |
| 2084 | 5,003 | 1,856 | 11,352 | 6,604 |

32. Reference: (Brass 1974). We leave this as a research question for the interested reader.
33. For a population with 185 -year age intervals the projection matrix will again have 36 rows and 36 columns. If females are placed first in the matrix and the corresponding vector, and the span of fertile ages is $15-45$, we will have for the first row $D$ times the female fertility rates, averaged as in Problem 16 between successive ages. These will occupy the first 10 positions and later positions up to the 18th will be zero. For the 19th row we will have the same but multiplied by $s$. The subdiagonal from the second row to the 18th will be $L_{i-1} / L_{i-2}, i=2$ to 18 . For the 19th to 36 th positions of both the first and the 19th rows the age-specific rates of fatherhood will be used, all multiplied by $1-D$.

The projection matrix in block form, for female dominance, and arranged with females first, is

$$
\mathbf{A}=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
\mathbf{B}+\mathbf{S} & \mathbf{O} \\
\mathbf{S B} & \mathbf{S}^{*}
\end{array}\right],
$$

where each of the blocks is $18 \times 18$ for 5 -year age groups to age $90, \mathrm{~S}^{*}$ is the survivorship matrix for males, $\mathbf{O}$ is an $18 \times 18$ matrix of zeros, and $s \mathbf{B}$ is the female birth matrix multiplied by the scalar $s$. Similarly for male dominance we have

$$
\mathbf{A}^{*}=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
\mathbf{S} & \mathbf{B}^{*} / s \\
\mathbf{O} & \mathbf{B}^{*}+\mathbf{S}^{*}
\end{array}\right]
$$

where $\mathbf{B}^{*}$ is the matrix whose top row is age-specific fertility rates of men. For mixed dominance we take the weighted average:

$$
\mathbf{A} D+\mathbf{A}^{*}(1-D)=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
D \mathbf{B}+\mathbf{S} & (1-D) \mathbf{B}^{*} / s \\
s D \mathbf{B} & \mathbf{B}^{*}(1-D)+\mathbf{S}^{*}
\end{array}\right]
$$

34. The simplest representation is exactly the same as the matrix of Problem 33, but now in place of each element is a $2 \times 2$ block. Such blocks, both those for survivors and those for births, are broken down according to rural and urban, with the off-diagonal elements being migration.
35. Successive premultiplication by matrix A of Question 33 multiplies the males by a zero matrix in the second block of the first row, and by a survivorship matrix all of whose elements are less than unity in the second block of the second row. The square of the matrix must also have a zero block in its upper right-hand quarter and similarly for every higher power. The lower right of the powers of the matrix will be $S^{*}, S^{* 2}$, etc., and so diminishing towards zero, since the female-dominant $\mathbf{A}$ has zeros only in its first row.

## CHAPTER VI

## Stochastic Population Models

In each person's life, certain events occur randomly. The sexes of one's future children are chance events. Probabilistic occurrences affect the size of one's family. The sizes of future generations from a specific couple are random variables. We will investigate the problem of finding the probability of extinction of a male line of descent. After a brief introduction to the needed mathematical concepts, we will study problems of the following type: If a newly married couple decided to have children until they have one of each sex, what is an estimate of the size of their completed family?

Pressures of overpopulation or of the fall in births have forced countries to look at the national effects of various family sizes. Although this book has presented many deterministic projection models for such problems, there are stochastic models which also help in population studies. The two types of models can serve to complement each other and provide fuller insights into population dynamics.

### 6.1. Needed Concepts

The sample space of an experiment is the set of all of its possible outcomes. It is denoted by $S$. Any subset $E$ of $S$ is called an event. If two events $E$ and $F$ have no points in common, i.e. $E \cap F=\varnothing, E$ and $F$ are said to be mutually exclusive. If $E_{1}, E_{2}, \ldots$ are events, then their union $\bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} E_{n}$ is an event composed of all sample points which belong to at least one $E_{n}$. For any $E \subseteq S$, its complement $E^{c}$ consists of points in $S$ which are not in $E$. A family
$\mathscr{F}$ of cevents is a collection of subsets of $S$ with the following properties:
(1) $S \in \mathscr{F}$
(2) If $E \in \mathscr{F}$, then $E^{c} \in \mathscr{F}$.
(3) If $E_{1}, E_{2}, \ldots$ belong to $\mathscr{F}$, then $\bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} E_{n} \in \mathscr{F}$.

For each $S$ and $\mathscr{F}$, we assume that a probability function $P(\cdot)$ has been defined on $\mathscr{F}$ with the properties:
(1) $P(E) \geq 0$ for $E \in \mathscr{F}$.
(2) $P(S)=1$.
(3) If $E_{1}, E_{2}, \ldots$ belong to $\mathscr{F}$, and $E_{j} \cap E_{k}=\varnothing$ for $j \neq k$, then $P\left[\bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} E_{n}\right]=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} P\left(E_{n}\right)$.
If $E$ and $F$ are two events in $S$, with $P(F)>0$, then the conditional probability that $E$ occurs given that $F$ has occurred is denoted and defined by

$$
P(E \mid F)=\frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)}
$$

Two events $E$ and $F$ are called independent events if

$$
P(E \cap F)=P(E) P(F) .
$$

Utilizing the conditional probability definition, this implies that $P(E \mid F)=$ $P(E)$, i.e., knowing that $F$ has occurred does not affect one's prediction of $E$ occurring.

A random variable $X$ is a real finite valued function defined on a sample space. The distribution function $F(\cdot)$ of the random variable $X$ is defined for any real number $x,-\infty<x<\infty$, by

$$
F(x)=P(X \leq x) .
$$

$F(x)$ has the properties:
(1) $F(x)$ is nondecreasing, $-\infty<x<\infty$;
(2) $F(x+)=F(x)$, i.e., $F(x)$ is continuous from the right for $-\infty<x<\infty$;
(3) $\lim _{x \rightarrow-\infty} F(x)=0$;
(4) $\lim _{x \rightarrow+\infty} F(x)=1$.

A random variable which can assume at most a countable number of possible values is called discrete, whereas one which assumes a continuum of possible values is called continuous. If $X$ is a discrete random variable with values $x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots$ then its probability function $p(x)$ is defined by

$$
p(x)=P\{X=x\}
$$

and has the properties that

$$
p\left(x_{i}\right) \geq 0 \quad \text { and } \quad \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} p\left(x_{i}\right)=1 .
$$

If $\boldsymbol{X}$ is continuous, it possesses a probability density function given by

$$
f(x)=\frac{d}{d x} F(x)
$$

The mean value of a random variable is given by

$$
E(X)=\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} x_{i} p\left(x_{i}\right) \text { in the discrete case }
$$

and

$$
E(X)=\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x f(x) d x \text { in the continuous case. }
$$

For the two cases, the variance is defined by

$$
\operatorname{Var}(X)=\sum_{i=1}^{\infty}\left[x_{i}-E(X)\right]^{2} p\left(x_{i}\right),
$$

or

$$
\operatorname{Var}(X)=\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}[x-E(X)]^{2} f(x) d x
$$

Usually, it is more convenient to evaluate the variance from the following equivalent forms:

$$
\operatorname{Var}(X)=\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} x_{i}^{2} p\left(x_{i}\right)-[E(X)]^{2}
$$

or

$$
\operatorname{Var}(X)=\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^{2} f(x) d x-[E(X)]^{2}
$$

of which the square root is the standard deviation. The $k$ th moment about the origin is denoted and defined by

$$
E\left(\dot{X}^{k}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} x_{i}^{k} p\left(x_{i}\right),
$$

or

$$
E\left(X^{k}\right)=\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^{k} f(x) d x
$$

Note that $\operatorname{Var}(X)=E\left(X^{2}\right)-[E(X)]^{2}$.
The random variable $X$ has a binomial distribution if

$$
P(X=k)=\binom{n}{k} p^{k}(1-p)^{n-k}, \quad p>0 \text { for } k=0,1,2, \ldots, n
$$

This distribution is so-named because the underlying experiment can assume only two forms. The mean value $E(X)=n p$, and the variance $\operatorname{Var}(X)=$ $n p(1-p)$. A second discrete distribution is the Poisson one, in which

$$
P(X=k)=\frac{e^{-2} \lambda^{k}}{k!}, \quad k=0,1,2, \ldots \text { for some } \lambda>0 .
$$

Both the mean and variance have value $\lambda$.
A third discrete distribution is the geometric distribution, for which

$$
P(X=k)=q^{k-1} p, \quad k=1,2, \ldots
$$

The mean value will be found in an exercise.
The random variable $X$ has an exponential distribution if

$$
P(X \leq x)= \begin{cases}1-e^{-A x}, & x \geq 0 \\ 0, & x<0\end{cases}
$$

Here the mean $E(X)=1 / A$.
A random variable $W$ has a normal distribution with mean $\mu$ and variance $\sigma^{2}$ if

$$
P(W \leq w)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi \sigma^{2}}} \int_{-\infty}^{w} \exp \left\{-\frac{[x-\mu]^{2}}{2 \sigma^{2}}\right\} d x .
$$

Note that

$$
f(w)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi \sigma^{2}}} \exp \left\{-\frac{[w-\mu]^{2}}{2 \sigma^{2}}\right\} \text { for }-\infty<w<\infty .
$$

A number $x_{p}$ is called a $100 p$ th percentile if

$$
P\left[X<x_{p}\right] \leq p \quad \text { and } \quad P\left[X \leq x_{p}\right] \geq p
$$

The moment generating function of a random variable $X$ is denoted by $M_{X}(\theta)$, and is given by one of the expressions:

$$
M_{x}(\theta)=\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} e^{\theta x_{i}} p\left(x_{i}\right),
$$

or

$$
M_{\mathrm{X}}(\theta)=\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{\theta x} f(x) d x
$$

One use of the moment generating function appears in the formula:

$$
E\left(X^{k}\right)=\left.\frac{d^{k}}{d \theta^{k}} M_{x}(\theta)\right|_{\theta=0}
$$

If $N$ is a discrete random variable, with values $0,1,2, \ldots$, then its probability generating function is denoted and given by

$$
P(s)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} p_{k} s^{k}, \quad-1 \leq s \leq 1 .
$$

The mean value $E(N)=P^{\prime}(1) . P(s)$ also equals $E\left(s^{N}\right)$. Note that $P(1)=1$.
Consider two random variables $X$ and $Y$ defined on the same sample space $S$. If for all events $A$ and $B$ in $S$, the following equation holds:

$$
P(X \text { in } A \text { and } Y \text { in } B)=P(X \text { in } A) P(Y \text { in } B),
$$

we say that $X$ and $Y$ are independent. The same concept can be expressed through distribution functions, probability functions, or probability density functions, thus:

$$
P[X \leq x, Y \leq y]=F_{X}(x) F_{Y}(y),
$$

or

$$
P[X=x, Y=y]=P[X=x] P[Y=y],
$$

or

$$
f(x, y)=f_{X}(x) f_{Y}(y) .
$$

The discrete or continuous nature of $X$ and $Y$ determines the appropriate equation. These equations can be extended to define the independence of $n$ random variables $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}$.

For sums of independent random variables, consider

$$
S_{n}=X_{1}+X_{2}+\cdots+X_{n},
$$

where the $\left\{X_{i}\right\}$ are independent random variables. Let

$$
\mu_{k}=E\left(X_{k}\right), \quad k=1,2, \ldots, n,
$$

and

$$
\sigma_{k}^{2}=\operatorname{Var}\left(X_{k}\right), \quad k=1,2, \ldots, n .
$$

Then

$$
E\left(S_{n}\right)=\sum_{k=1}^{n} \mu_{k} \text { and } \operatorname{Var}\left(S_{n}\right)=\sum_{k=1}^{n} \sigma_{k}^{2} .
$$

Moreover the moment generating function for $S_{n}$ is given by the formula

$$
M_{S_{n}}(\theta)=M_{X_{1}}(\theta) M_{X_{2}}(\theta) \cdots M_{X_{n}}(\theta) .
$$

Likewise, the probability generating function is given by the formula

$$
P_{S_{n}}(s)=P_{X_{1}}(s) P_{X_{2}}(s) \cdots P_{X_{n}}(s) .
$$

One form of the Central Limit Theorem will be utilized in the problems. Assume that $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots$ are independent, identically distributed random variables with common finite mean $\mu$ and variance $\sigma^{2}$. Let

$$
S_{n}=X_{1}+X_{2}+\cdots+X_{n} .
$$

Then for every fixed $\beta$,

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} P\left\{\frac{S_{n}-n \mu}{\sigma \sqrt{n}} \leq \beta\right\}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\beta} e^{-x^{2} / 2} d x
$$

This enables one to discuss confidence intervals for an unknown mean $\mu$. Thus, for example:

$$
P\left\{\frac{S_{n}}{n}-\frac{2 \sigma}{\sqrt{n}}<\mu<\frac{S_{n}}{n}+\frac{2 \sigma}{\sqrt{n}}\right\}=0.954
$$

If $\sigma$ is known then there is a probability of 0.954 that the random interval

$$
\left[\frac{S_{n}}{n}-\frac{2 \sigma}{\sqrt{n}}, \frac{S_{n}}{n}+\frac{2 \sigma}{\sqrt{n}}\right]
$$

includes the unknown mean $\mu$. If one uses $3 \sigma / \sqrt{n}$, the probability increases to 0.997 .

### 6.2. Problems

1. Assume that the probability of a girl on a particular birth is $p$, and of a boy is $q=1-p$. Let $N=$ random number of children for a couple with the family goal of having one girl. Find $E(N)$.
2. If $p=0.5$ and $q=0.5$, graphically portray the probability function for $N$. What is its 95 th percentile?
3. Assume the same probabilities as in Problem 1. Let $N=$ random number of children for a couple whose family goal is to have one boy and one girl. Find $E(N)$.
4. If $p=0.5$ and $q=0.5$, graphically portray the probability function for $N$ in Problem 3. What is its 95 th percentile?
5. Let $S=\sum_{i=1}^{5,000,000} X_{i}$ where each $X_{i}$ represents the random number of children to a newly married couple. Find $E(S)$ under family goals from Problems 1 and 3. By how much do they differ when $p=0.5$ and $q=0.5$ ?
6. Find the moment generating function for $N$ in Problem 1, and hence determine $\operatorname{Var}(N)$.
7. Find the moment generating function for $N$ in Problem 3 in general. Determine its $\operatorname{Var}(N)$ when $p=q=0.5$.
8. Let $S$ be as described in Problem 5. Use the Central Limit Theorem to determine 95 -percent confidence intervals for $S$ under family stratcgies one and two, when $p=q=0.5$.
9. If a couple decides to have $n$ children-regardless of sex - what is the probability that $k$ of these ( $k \leq n$ ) will be girls?
10. A certain couple decides to have children until it gets one boy and will then stop having children (assuming a perfect contraceptive exists). What is the expected size of their family? What is the expected number of girls that will be born in the attempt to get one boy?
11. In a certain (hypothetical) population one third of the couples have a probability of 0.4 of bearing a boy on any birth; one third have a probability of 0.5 ; and one third have a probability of 0.6 . If in this population all couples keep having children until they have a boy and then stop, what is the mean family size for each third of the population? What is the proportion of births that are boy children? (Goodman 1961.)
12. Refer to Problem 3.

Assuming the entire population follows such a policy determine the projected sex ratio in the population, where

$$
\text { Projected sex ratio }=\frac{E(\text { no. of boys in the population })}{E \text { (no. of girls in the population) }}
$$

13. (a) If the probability of a male birth equals 0.5 for the population in Question 12, what will be the expected family size in the population?
(b) How will the expected family size change if $q=0.7$ ?
14. If a couple has children until it obtains two girls and the couple is able to achieve a certain degree of sex control so as to change $p$ from 0.5 to 0.7 , how will the expected family size change? Compare to Question 13.
15. In a certain population $p=0.5$ for half the couples and $p=0.7$ for the other half. If all couples have children until they have one child of each sex, what will be the projected sex ratio in the population? Compare to the case when $p=0.6$ for the entire population and explain the difference. (See Questions 12 and 13.)
16. If a family has children until it obtains $\alpha$ sons and $\beta$ daughters, what is the probability that it will have $n$ children in total, $n \geq \alpha+\beta$.
17. The symbol $p_{j}$ will represent the probability of having $j$ sons, and assume these probabilities apply independently to all males in all generations. Let $\mu=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} k p_{k}$, the expected number of direct descendants in the above branching process. Compute $\mu$ in case (a): $p_{0}=0.50, p_{1}=0.25$, and $p_{2}=0.25$; and case (b): $p_{0}=p_{1}=p_{2}=p_{3}=0.25$.
18. Let $x$ denote the chance of extinction of a male line starting with one man. Then $x$ is the solution of Galton's equation:

$$
x=p_{0}+p_{1} x+p_{2} x^{2}+\cdots
$$

and relies upon the following:
"Theorem. If $\mu \leq 1$, the process dies out with probability one. If, however, $\mu>1$ the probability $x_{n}$ that the process terminates at or before the $n$th generation tends to the unique root $x<1$ of Galton's equation."
(Reference: Feller 1968, p. 297.) Utilize that theorem to determine $x$ for the processes in Problem 17(a) and 17(b).
19. In each generation and independently a man has no sons with probability 0.1 , one son with probability 0.4 , two sons with probability 0.5 .
(a) If we consider one male in the population who is too young to have children, what is the chance of eventual extinction of his male line?
(b) Consider a man who has two children; what is the chance of extinction of his male line?
20. In a population where one half of the men have no sons and one half have two sons, what is the probability of extinction of a male line? If one half have one son and one half have two sons, what is the chance of extinction?
21. Assume that in each generation the probabilities that a man will have $i$ sons, $i=0,1,2, \ldots$ form a geometric progression. Specifically, let the probability of a man's having no sons equal $\pi$, of having one son equal $\pi g$, of having two sons equal $\pi g^{2}$, etc. Determine $m$, the mean number of sons for this man, in terms of $\pi$ and $g$. (Steffensen 1930.)
22. For Question 21 determine $x$, the probability that this man's male line will become extinct.
23. Assume a population in which the number of sons $(Y)$ of a man follows a Poisson distribution with mean 1.1:

$$
P(Y=y)=\frac{e^{-1.1} 1.1^{y}}{y!}, \quad y=0,1,2, \ldots
$$

What is the probability of extinction of a male line of descent?
24. Lotka has shown that in America the probabilities of having $k$ sons was quite well described by the distribution $p_{0}=0.4825, p_{k}=(0.2126)$ $(0.5893)^{k-1}$ for $k \geq 1$. Note that with the exception of the first term this is a geometric progression. Using Lotka's approximations, determine the probability of extinction of a male line. (Feller 1968, p. 294.)
25. Suppose that $p_{j}$ is decreased by a small amount and $p_{i}$ is increased by this amount, for some $i<j$. Determine the effect on the probability of extinction.
26. Let $p_{i}$ be the probability that a man will have $i$ sons as in Question 17. Let $Z_{n}$ denote the size of the $n$th generation (with $Z_{0}=1$ ), and let $f_{n}(s)$ be the generating function of its probability distribution. Thus, for example,

$$
f_{1}(s)=f(s)=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} p_{i} s^{i}
$$

Show that $f_{n}(s)=f\left(f_{n-1}(s)\right)$.

Hint: Note that the $Z_{n}$ members of the $n$th generation can be divided into $Z_{1}$ groups according to their ancestor in the first generation. (Feller 1968.)
27. (a) Use the result of Problem 26 to prove that $E\left(Z_{n}\right)=\mu^{n}$, where $\mu=E\left(Z_{1}\right)$.
(b) Compute $E\left(Z_{n}\right), n=1,2,3,4,5$ for the processes in Problem 17(a) and 17(b).
(c) Problem 7 (Feller 1968, pp. 301-302) yields the result

$$
\operatorname{Var}\left(Z_{n}\right)=\sigma^{2}\left(\mu^{2 n-2}+\mu^{2 n-3}+\cdots+\mu^{n-1}\right), \quad \text { where } \sigma^{2}=\sum_{j=0}^{\infty}(j-\mu)^{2} p_{j} .
$$

Compute $\operatorname{Var}\left(Z_{5}\right)$ and Standard Deviation $\left(Z_{5}\right)$ for the processes in Problem 17(a) and 17(b).
28. Define a'random variable

$$
Y_{n}=1+Z_{1}+\cdots+Z_{n} .
$$

As explained on page 298 of Feller (1968), $Y_{n}$ is "the total number of descendents up to and including the $n$th generation and also including the ancestor (zero generation)." As $n \rightarrow \infty$, one obtains the size of the total progeny.
(a) If $\mu<1$, express $E\left(Y_{n}\right)$ in a compact form. What is $\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} E\left(Y_{n}\right)$ ?
(b) If $\mu=1$, express $E\left(Y_{n}\right)$ in a simpler form. What is $\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} E\left(Y_{n}\right)$ ?
29. A method presented by Burks (1933) can be used to estimate the distribution of sizes of completed families in a stationary population represented by a random sample of people. Assuming that the number of families which will have $n$ children when completed is proportional to $O(n)$, and letting $N(j)$ equal the number of children in the sample of birth order $j$, show under what circumstances

$$
N(n)=O(n)+O(n+1)+O(n+2)+\cdots
$$

30. (a) Using Question 29 show that $O(n)=N(n)-N(n+1)$.
(b) Assuming that a family cannot have more than $U$ children, determine the percentage distribution of $O(n)$, i.e., the percentage of families with $n$ children.
31. Using $O(n)$ as described above, show that the estimated average size of completed families equals

$$
N / N(1), \quad \text { where } N=\sum_{j=1}^{v} N(j) .
$$

$N=$ the number of children in the sample, and $N(1)$ equals the number of first born in the sample.
32. Determine the mean number of children of completed families in the population represented by this given sample:

| First births | 50 | Fourth births | 34 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | ---: |
| Second births | 43 | Fifth and higher | 26 |
| Third births | 37 | Total | 190 |

33. Wilson and Hilferty (1935) extended the Burks rule of Question 29 by claiming that at any birth $i$, the number of future births to be expected can be estimated by the ratio of the number of births of order higher than $i$ to the number of births of order $i$. Determine the expected number of future births for a female who has $i$ children in the population described below and discuss the results.

| $i$ | Births | $i$ | Births | $i$ | Births |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 339,771 | 8 | 17,112 | 15 | 468 |
| 2 | 248,920 | 9 | 11,157 | 16 | 233 |
| 3 | 155,114 | 10 | 7,312 | 17 | 120 |
| 4 | 95,054 | 11 | 4,405 | 18 | 61 |
| 5 | 59,445 | 12 | 2,697 | 19 | 34 |
| 6 | 38,641 | 13 | 1,618 | $20+$ | 39 |
| 7 | 25,610 | 14 | 926 |  |  |

34. Assume that a random sample of adults in a population is obtained and each person is asked how many siblings he or she has. Letting $N_{k}$ equal the number of families with $k$ children, estimate $P_{k}$, the proportion of all families-with at least one child-which contain $k$ children.
35. Assume that a random sample of 28 adults produced $N_{0}=2, N_{1}=6$, $N_{2}=12$, and $N_{3}=8$. Use the proportions $\left\{P_{k}\right\}$ to compute the mean number of children in a completed family in the population.
36. The probability $R_{k}$ that a family with $k$ children will increase (i.e., the probability that a couple will go on to their $(k+1)$ th child after having had their $k$ th child) is called the parity progression ratio. Show that

$$
R_{k}=\frac{\sum_{i=k+1}^{\infty} P_{i}}{\sum_{i=k}^{\infty} P_{i}}
$$

and define $P_{k}$ in terms of $R_{k}$.
37. For the sample described in Problem 35 estimate the parity progression ratios.
38. If $R_{0}=a$ is the chance of having a first child for married couples, and $R_{i}=b$ is the chance of having an $(i+1)$ th child for couples with $i$ children, $i>0$, what is the distribution of children among married couples? What is the mean number of children to married couples? (Ryder.)
39. Consider a time-homogeneous Markov chain with states of nature $u$ (urban dweller) and $r$ (rural dweller). Let the matrix of transition probabilities be:

$$
M=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
m_{u u} & m_{u r} \\
m_{r u} & m_{r r}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0.999 & 0.001 \\
0.020 & 0.980
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Assume that the initial distribution of urban and rural dwellers is:

$$
P^{(0)}=\binom{P_{u}}{P_{r}} .
$$

The superscript ( 0 ) on $P$ denotes the initial time. Future times will also be indicated by superscripts. In order to project forward, interchange rows and columns,

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
m_{u u} & m_{r u} \\
m_{u r} & m_{r r}
\end{array}\right)\binom{P_{u}}{P_{r}}=\binom{m_{u u} P_{u}+m_{r u} P_{r}}{m_{u r} P_{u}+m_{r r} P_{r}} .
$$

In general, the distribution $t$ years later is given by

$$
P^{(t)}=\tilde{M}^{\prime} P^{(0)},
$$

where $\tilde{M}$ is the transpose of $M$. If $P_{u}=8,000,000$ and $P_{r}=77,000,000$, find $P^{(10)}$.

Reference: This problem, as well as Problems 40 through 46, are based on the paper: Beekman, John A. "Several demographic projection techniques," Rural Demography, 8 (1981), 1-11.
40. The Markovian model in Problem 39 has no provision for growth. For simplicity, assume that the growth factor $e^{r}=e^{0.02}$ can be applied in each of the 10 years. The population projections then become:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P^{(1)}=\tilde{M} e^{r} P^{(0)}, \\
& P^{(2)}=\tilde{M} e^{r} P^{(1)}=\tilde{M} e^{r} \tilde{M} e^{r} P^{(0)}=\tilde{M}^{2} e^{2 r} P^{(0)}, \\
& P^{(3)}=\tilde{M} e^{r} P^{(2)}=\tilde{M} e^{r} \tilde{M}^{2} e^{2 r} P^{(0)}=\tilde{M}^{3} e^{3 r} P^{(0)}, \ldots, \\
& P^{(10)}=\tilde{M}^{10} e^{10 r} P^{(0)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Compute $P^{(10)}$ for Problem 39 with $r=0.02$.
41. The Markovian model in Problems 39 and 40 can show the effects of rural-urban shifts on aggregate births. If the overall birth rates in urban and
rural parts are $b_{u}$ and $b_{r}$, respectively, arranged in a horizontal vector $B$, then the births at time $t$ are

$$
B P^{(t)}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
b_{u} & b_{r}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{ll}
m_{u u} & m_{r u} \\
m_{u r} & m_{r r}
\end{array}\right)^{t}\left(\begin{array}{l}
t r \\
e^{t r} P_{u} \\
e^{t}
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Assume that $b_{u}=0.035$ and $b_{r}=0.050$. Compute $B e^{10 r} P^{(0)}-B \tilde{M}^{10} e^{10 r} P^{(0)}$ to see the difference in aggregate projected births for the eleventh year from the initial time point.
42. The statistical estimation of the transition probabilities of a Markov chain can be based on the principle of maximum likelihood (see, for example, Ross 1972, pp. 240-242). Such an estimator of the probability that the process goes from state $i$ to state $j$ is obtained from the proportion of time that the process, when leaving state $i$, next enters state $j$. How would you estimate $m_{u r}$ and $m_{r u}$ ? Use a property of $M$ to deduce estimates for $m_{u u}$ and $m_{r r}$.
43. Powers of the $M$ matrix (rather than the transpose) give probabilities of events happening within various lengths of time. Interpret the elements of $M^{10}$.
44. Let

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \pi_{u}=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} m_{i u}^{(n)} \text { for } i=u \text { or } r ; \\
& \pi_{r}=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} m_{i r}^{(n)} \text { for } i=u \text { or } r .
\end{aligned}
$$

Our Markov chain is ergodic (see page 95 of the S. Ross book), and hence $\pi_{u}$ and $\pi_{r}$ exist independent of the value of $i$, and they constitute the unique nonnegative solution vector of the equations:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\pi_{u}=\pi_{u} m_{u u}+\pi_{r} m_{r u}, \\
\pi_{r}=\pi_{u} m_{u r}+\pi_{r} m_{r r}, \\
\pi_{u}+\pi_{r}=1 .
\end{gathered}
$$

Solve that system for $\pi_{u}$ and $\pi_{r}$. How would you interpret $\pi_{u}$ and $\pi_{r}$ ?
45. For the matrix $M$ in Problem 39, obtain $\pi_{u}$ and $\pi_{r}$. Assume a different set of matrix values, i.e.,

$$
M^{*}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0.999 & 0.001 \\
0.004 & 0.996
\end{array}\right)
$$

What revised values of $\pi_{\mu}$ and $\pi_{r}$ result ?
46. The ergodic theorem for Markov chains (Problem 44 above) has a parallel in Lotka's ergodic theorem in demography. What does it say, and why are the theorems similar?
47. Assume that $\left\{X_{n}, n=0,1,2, \ldots\right\}$ is a Markov chain. Let the $n$-step probabilities be

$$
P_{i j}^{n}=P\left\{X_{n+m}=j \mid X_{m}=i\right\}
$$

for $n \geq 0, i, j \geq 0$. The Chapman-Kolmogorov equations state that

$$
P_{i j}^{n+m}=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} P_{i k}^{n} P_{k j}^{m}
$$

for all $n, m \geq 0$, all $i, j$.
(a) Prove those equations.
(b) Graphically illustrate what they say.

Reference: This problem, as well as Problems 48 and 49, are based on Chapters 4 and 6 of the S . Ross text.
48. A birth and death process is a system whose state at any time is the number of people in the system at that time. It can be shown that when there are $n$ people in the system then the time until the next arrival is exponentially distributed with mean $1 / \lambda_{n}$, and is independent of the time until the next departure which is itself exponentially distributed with mean $1 / \mu_{n}$. Prove that if one event occurs at an exponential rate $\lambda$ and another independent event at an exponential rate $\mu$, then together they occur at an exponential rate $\lambda+\mu$.
49. Let $X(t)$ be the number of people in a birth and death process at time $t$, and let $P_{n}$ be the limiting probability that there will be $n$ people in the system, i.e.,

$$
P_{n}=\lim _{t \rightarrow \infty} P\{X(t)=n\} .
$$

On pages 154-155 of the S . Ross text, it is demonstrated that

$$
P_{n}=\frac{\lambda_{0} \lambda_{1} \cdots \lambda_{n-1}}{\mu_{1} \mu_{2} \cdots \mu_{n}\left(1+\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\lambda_{0} \lambda_{1}: \cdots \lambda_{n-1}}{\mu_{1} \mu_{2} \cdots \mu_{n}}\right)}
$$

for $n \geq 1$. For these probabilities to exist, it is necessary and sufficient that

$$
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\lambda_{0} \lambda_{1} \cdots \lambda_{n-1}}{\mu_{1} \mu_{2} \cdots \mu_{n}}<\infty .
$$

Assume that

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\mu_{n}=n \mu, & n \geq 1, \\
\lambda_{n}=n \lambda+\theta, & n \geq 0,
\end{array}
$$

where $\lambda>0, \mu>0$, and $\theta>0$. Each person is assumed to give birth at an exponential rate $\lambda$. Also, there is an exponential rate of immigration of $\theta$. Hence, by Problem 48, the total birth rate when there are $n$ persons in the system is $n \lambda+\theta$. What conditions are needed for the test series to converge?
50. Assume that $\lambda_{n}=n \lambda, \mu_{n}=n \mu$ for $n \geq 0, n \geq 1$, respectively, and that

$$
P_{n}(t)=P\{X(t)=n\} .
$$

Then $P_{n}(t)$ satisfies the differential equations ${ }^{\circ}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{0}^{\prime}(t) & =\mu P_{1}(t) \\
P_{n}^{\prime}(t) & =-(\lambda+\mu) n P_{n}(t)+\lambda(n-1) P_{n-1}(t)+\mu(n+1) P_{n+1}(t) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Define

$$
M(t)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n P_{n}(t) .
$$

Assume that the initial population size is $A$. Prove that $M(t)=A e^{(\lambda-\mu) t}$. What conclusion do you reach, as $t \rightarrow \infty$ ?

Reference: Pages 456-457 of W. Feller text.
51. Following (abridged from Lotka) is a distribution of completed fraternities, i.e., a distribution of fathers according to the number of their sons.

| Size of fraternity | Number of cases |
| :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 5 |
| 1 | 2 |
| 2 | 1 |
| 3 | 1 |
| 4 | 1 |
| Total | 10 |

Find
(a) the mean number of sons for a father taken at random, say $G$;
(b) the variance $\sigma^{2}$ of the number of sons;
(c) the distribution of sons according to the number of brothers that they have;
(d) the mean number of brothers for a son taken at random, say $B$.
52. (a) Show that the relation

$$
B=\frac{\sigma^{2}}{G}+G-1
$$

holds for your results in the preceding question.
(b) Show that it holds in general.
(c) Given that $B=2$ and $G=1$, calculate the standard deviation of completed fraternities.
53. The official estimate of population $x$ at some future time for a particular town is (thousands)

| $x$ | Probability |
| :---: | :---: |
| 250 | $1 / 3$ |
| 275 | $1 / 2$ |
| 300 | $1 / 6$ |

The losses $L(x, \hat{x})$ associated with combinations of $x$ and $\hat{x}$ are known to be

|  |  | $\hat{x}$ |  |  |
| ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
|  |  | 250 | 275 | 300 |
|  | 250 | 0 | 9 | 21 |
|  | 275 | 30 | 0 | 16 |
|  | 300 | 72 | 30 | 0 |

Find what estimate $\hat{x}$ gives minimum loss, as among $250,275,300$.

### 6.3. Solutions

1. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
E(N) & =1 p+2 q p+3 q^{2} p+\cdots \\
& =(1-q)+2 q(1-q)+3 q^{2}(1-q)+\cdots \\
& =1+q+q^{2}+q^{3}+\cdots \\
& =1 /(1-q)=1 / p
\end{aligned}
$$



The 95th percentile is five.
3.

$$
\begin{aligned}
E(N) & =2(p q+q p)+3\left(p^{2} q+q^{2} p\right)+4\left(p^{3} q+q^{3} p\right)+5\left(p^{4} q+q^{4} p\right)+\cdots \\
& =q\left\{2 p+3 p^{2}+4 p^{3}+5 p^{4}+\cdots\right\}+p\left\{2 q+3 q^{2}+4 q^{3}+5 q^{4}+\cdots\right\} \\
& =q \frac{d}{d p} \sum_{k=2}^{\infty} p^{k}+p \frac{d}{d q} \sum_{k=2}^{\infty} q^{k} \\
& =q \frac{d}{d p}\left\{\frac{1}{1-p}-1-p\right\}+p \frac{d}{d q}\left\{\frac{1}{1-q}-1-q\right\} \\
& =q^{-1}-q+p^{-1}-p=q^{-1}+p^{-1}-1 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Move briefly, if $N_{b}$ is the number of children until the first boy, and $N_{g}$ the number until the first girl, and $N_{b g}$ the number until one boy or one girl, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
E(N) & =E\left(N_{b}\right)+E\left(N_{g}\right)-E\left(N_{b g}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{q}+\frac{1}{p}-1 .
\end{aligned}
$$

4. The 95th percentile is six.
5. $E(S)=5,000,000 / p$, and $E(S)=5,000,000\left(q^{-1}+p^{-1}-1\right)$. When $p=$ 0.5 , and $q=0.5$, the mean amounts differ by $5,000,000$ !
6. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left[e^{\theta N}\right] & =\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} e^{\theta k} q^{k-1} p \\
& =\frac{p e^{\theta}}{1-q e^{\theta}}, \quad \theta<-\ln _{e} q_{.} . \\
\operatorname{Var}(N) & =\frac{q}{p^{2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

7. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left[e^{\theta N}\right] & =\sum_{k=2}^{\infty} e^{\theta k}\left\{q p^{k-1}+p q^{k-1}\right\} \\
& =\frac{q}{p} \sum_{k=2}^{\infty}\left(p e^{\theta}\right)^{k}+\frac{p}{q} \sum_{k=2}^{\infty}\left(q e^{\theta}\right)^{k} \\
& =\frac{q p e^{2 \theta}}{1-p e^{\theta}}+\frac{p q e^{2 \theta}}{1-q e^{\theta}} \text { for } \theta<\min \left(-\ln _{e} p,-\ln _{e} q\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

When $p=q=0.5, E\left[e^{\theta N}\right]=e^{2 \theta} /\left(2-e^{\theta}\right)$, and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Var}(N) & =E\left(N^{2}\right)-[E(N)]^{2} \\
& =11-9=2 .
\end{aligned}
$$

8. For family strategy number one,

$$
\begin{aligned}
E(S) \pm 2 \text { Standard Deviation }(S) & =10,000,000 \pm 2(10,000,000)^{1 / 2} \\
& =10,000,000 \pm 6,325 .
\end{aligned}
$$

For family strategy number two,

$$
\begin{aligned}
E(S) \pm 2 \text { Standard Deviation }(S) & =15,000,000 \pm 2(10,000,000)^{1 / 2} \\
& =15,000,000 \pm 6,325 .
\end{aligned}
$$

9. $P[X=k]=\binom{n}{k} p^{k}(1-p)^{n-k}$.
10. (Dual of Problem 1.) $E(N)=1 / q . E(N-1)=q^{-1}-1$.
11. Let there be $C$ couples in the population. Then

$$
\text { Projected sex ratio }=\frac{C\left(q^{-1}+p^{-1}-1\right) q}{C\left(q^{-1}+p^{-1}-1\right) p}=\frac{q}{p}
$$

13. (a) 3.0. (b) 3.76 .
14. The expected number of children until the first girl is $1 / p$; then the process starts over with another $1 / p$ children to the second girl; hence a total of $2 / p$ children.

If $p=0.5, E(N)=4$, whereas if $p=0.7, E(N)=2.86$.
15. As in Problem 12, let there be $C$ couples in the population. In the first case,

$$
\text { Projected sex ratio }=\frac{\frac{1}{2} C(3)(0.5)+\frac{1}{2} C(3.76)(0.3)}{\frac{1}{2} C(3)(0.5)+\frac{1}{2} C(3.76)(0.7)}=0.636
$$

In the second case,

$$
\text { Projected sex ratio }=\frac{C(3.1667)(0.4)}{C(3.1667)(0.6)}=0.667
$$

The average family size in the first case is 3.38 , and a slightly greater percentage will be girls than in the second case.

## 16.

$$
\begin{aligned}
P[N=n]= & P[N=n, \text { and the last child born }=\text { girl }] \\
& +P[N=n, \text { and the last child born }=\text { boy }] \\
= & \frac{(n-1)!}{(\beta-1)!(n-\beta)!} p^{\beta-1} q^{n-\beta} p+\frac{(n-1)!}{(\alpha-1)!(n-\alpha)!} q^{\alpha-1} p^{n-\alpha} q .
\end{aligned}
$$

17. (a) 0.75 . (b) 1.5 .
18. (a) $x=1$. (b) $-1+\sqrt{2} \fallingdotseq 0.4142$.
19. (a) $x=0.2 \quad(\mu=1.4)$.
(b) It is 1 if he (already) has two girls; it is 0.2 if he has one son; and it is $0.2(0.2)=0.04$ if he has two sons.
20. (a) Since $\mu=1, x=1$.
(b) $\mu=1.5$, and $x=0$. From first principles, the chance of extinction is 0 .
21. 

$$
m=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} i \pi g^{i}=\sum_{i=1}^{\infty} i \pi g^{i}=\pi g \frac{d}{d g} \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} g^{i}=\pi g(1-g)^{-2}
$$

22. 

$$
x=\left[1-(1-4 g \pi)^{1 / 2}\right] /(2 g),
$$

provided $\pi>(1-g)^{2} / g, x=1$ otherwise.
23.

$$
x=\sum_{y=0}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-1.1}(1.1)^{y}}{y!} x^{y}=e^{-1.1} e^{1.1 x}=e^{-1.1(1-x)}
$$

Since $\mu=1.1$, the desired $x<1$. As a first trial value, let $x_{1}=0.9$. Successive values are found by the Newton-Raphson method (sce Kellison (1975)), with

$$
f(x)=x-e^{-1.1(1-x)}
$$

The results are $0.614,0.757,0.810,0.8230$.
24.

$$
x=p_{0}+\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} 0.2126(0.5893)^{k-1} x^{k} .
$$

After summing the series, the resulting equation in $x$ is

$$
0.5893 x^{2}-1.0717 x+0.4825=0 .
$$

The meaningful root is 0.82 .
25. Let $p_{k}^{*}=p_{k}$, all $k$, except $p_{j}^{*}=p_{j}-\varepsilon$, and $p_{i}^{*}=p_{i}+\varepsilon$. Then

$$
x=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} p_{k}^{*} x^{k}=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} p_{k} x^{k}+\varepsilon\left(x^{i}-x^{j}\right) .
$$

Since $x^{i}-x^{j}>0$, the new probability of extinction is greater. This also follows from general reasoning.
26. $Z_{n}$ is the sum of $Z_{1}$ random variables $Z_{n}^{(k)}$, each representing the size of the offspring of one member of the first generation. By a conditioning argument, the generating function for $Z_{n}$ is

$$
f_{n}(s)=E\left\{s^{Z_{n}}\right\}=\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} E\left\{s^{Z_{n}} \mid Z_{1}=j\right\} P\left\{Z_{1}=j\right\} .
$$

By assumption the $Z_{n}^{(k)}$ are independent, and each has the same probability distribution as $Z_{n-1}$. Hence,

$$
E\left\{s^{Z_{n}} \mid Z_{1}=j\right\}=\left\{E\left\{s^{Z_{n-1}}\right\}\right\}^{j} .
$$

Hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
f_{n}(s) & =\sum_{j=0}^{\infty}\left\{E\left\{s^{Z_{n-1}}\right\}\right\}^{j} P\left\{Z_{1}=j\right\} \\
& =\sum_{j=0}^{\infty}\left\{f_{n-1}(s)\right\}^{j} p_{j} \\
& =f\left(f_{n-1}(s)\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

27. (a)

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left(Z_{n}\right) & =\left.\frac{d}{d s} f_{n}(s)\right|_{s=1} \\
& =\left.\frac{d}{d s} f\left(f_{n-1}(s)\right)\right|_{s=1} \\
& =f^{\prime}\left(f_{n-1}(1)\right) f_{n-1}^{\prime}(1) \\
& =f^{\prime}(1) f_{n-1}^{\prime}(1) \\
& =\mu E\left(Z_{n-1}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that $E\left(Z_{0}\right)=1$. Hence $E\left(Z_{n}\right)=\mu^{n}$.
(b) For the process in Problem 17(a), the expected values are $0.75,0.5625$, $0.4219,0.3164$, and 0.2373 .

For the process in Problem 17(b), the expected values are 1.5, 2.25, 3.375, 5.0625, and 7.5938.
(c) For process Problem 17(a),

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sigma^{2} & =0.6875, \quad \operatorname{Var}\left(Z_{5}\right)=0.6636 \text { and Standard Deviation }\left(Z_{5}\right) \\
& =0.8146
\end{aligned}
$$

For process Problem 17(b),

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sigma^{2} & =1.250, \quad \operatorname{Var}\left(Z_{5}\right)=83.4521 \quad \text { and } \quad \text { Standard Deviation }\left(Z_{5}\right) \\
& =9.1352 .
\end{aligned}
$$

28. (a)

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left(Y_{n}\right) & =1+\mu+\cdots+\mu^{n}=\frac{1-\mu^{n+1}}{1-\mu} . \\
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} E\left(Y_{n}\right) & =\frac{1}{1-\mu} .
\end{aligned}
$$

(b)

$$
E\left(Y_{n}\right)=n+1 . \quad \lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} E\left(Y_{n}\right)=+\infty .
$$

29. For better understanding, write out the equations for $N(1), N(2)$, and $N(3):$ e.g., $N(2)=$ number of children of birth order $2=O(2)+O(3)+$ $O(4)+\cdots$ Such relations are true provided that a complete enumeration is made of each sampled family. Thus, a sample point is one family's children, not a randomly selected child.
30. (a) Express $N(n)$ and $N(n+1)$ in terms of the $O(k)$ 's and subtract both sides of the equations.
(b) We want $A \sum_{n=1}^{U} O(n)=100$. But $A \sum_{n=1}^{U} O(n)=A N(1)$. Hence, $A=100 / N(1)$, and $100 O(n) / N(1)$ is the percentage of families with $n$ children, $n=1,2, \ldots, U$.
31. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text { Average size of families } & =\sum_{k=1}^{v} k p_{k} \\
& =\sum_{k=1}^{v} k \frac{O(k)}{N(1)} \\
= & \frac{1}{N(1)} \sum_{k=1}^{v} k[N(k)-N(k+1)] \\
= & \frac{1}{N(1)}[1 N(1)-1 N(2)+2 N(2)-2 N(3) \\
& +3 N(3)-3 N(4)+\cdots] \\
= & \frac{N}{N(1)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

32. $N / N(1)=3.8$. Note that $O(1)=7, O(2)=6, O(3)=3, O(4)=8$, and $O(5)=26$.
33. Let $r_{i}=\sum_{j>i} j$ Births/( $i$ Births)

| $i$ | $r_{i}$ | $i$ | $r_{i}$ | $i$ | $r_{i}$ |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| 1 | 1.969 | 8 | 1.699 | 15 | 1.041 |
| 2 | 1.687 | 9 | 1.606 | 16 | 1.090 |
| 3 | 1.708 | 10 | 1.450 | 17 | 1.117 |
| 4 | 1.787 | 11 | 1.407 | 18 | 1.197 |
| 5 | 1.858 | 12 | 1.297 | 19 | 1.147 |
| 6 | 1.858 | 13 | 1.163 | $20+$ | 0.000 |
| 7 | 1.803 | 14 | 1.031 |  |  |

These numbers do not seem to be realistic estimators of future births.
34. $P_{k}=\alpha\left(N_{k} / k\right)$. Thus for the data of the following Problem $35 P_{1}=\alpha_{1}^{2}$, $P_{2}=\alpha \frac{6}{2}, P_{3}=\alpha \frac{12}{3}$, and $P_{4}=\alpha \frac{8}{4}$. Since $\sum_{i=1}^{4} P_{i}=1, \alpha=11$.
35.

$$
E(N)=1\left(\frac{2}{11}\right)+2\left(\frac{3}{11}\right)+3\left(\frac{4}{11}\right)+4\left(\frac{2}{11}\right)=2.55 .
$$

36. $R_{k}=\sum_{i=k+1}^{\infty} P_{i} / \sum_{i=k}^{\infty} P_{i}$ by the definition of conditional probability.
$P_{U}=R_{U-1} ;$
$R_{1}=\left(1-P_{1}\right) / 1$ and hence $P_{1}=1-R_{1}$;
$R_{2}=\left(1-P_{1}-P_{2}\right) /\left(1-P_{1}\right)$ and hence $P_{2}=R_{1}\left(1-R_{2}\right) ;$
$R_{3}=\left(1-P_{1}-P_{2}-P_{3}\right) /\left(1-P_{1}-P_{2}\right)$ and hence $P_{3}=R_{1} R_{2}\left(1-R_{3}\right)$.
In general, $P_{k}=R_{1} R_{2} \cdots R_{k-1}\left(1-R_{k}\right)$.
37. $R_{1}=\frac{9}{11} ; R_{2}=\frac{2}{3} ; R_{3}=\frac{1}{3} ; R_{4}=0$.
38. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
R_{0} & =a \Rightarrow P_{0}=1-a ; P_{1}=(1-b) a ; P_{2}=b(1-b) a ; \\
P_{3} & =b^{2}(1-b) a ; \ldots ; P_{k}=b^{k-1}(1-b) a . \\
E(N) & =\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} k b^{k-1}(1-b) a=(1-b) a \frac{d}{d b}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} b^{k}\right)=\frac{a}{1-b} .
\end{aligned}
$$

39. 

$$
\tilde{M}^{2}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0.99802 & 0.03958 \\
0.00198 & 0.96042
\end{array}\right),
$$

and

$$
\tilde{M}^{10}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0.99089 & 0.18212 \\
0.00911 & 0.81788
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Thus

$$
P^{(10)}=\tilde{M}^{10} P^{(0)}=\binom{21,950}{63,050} .
$$

40. 

$$
P^{(10)}=\tilde{M}^{10} e^{10 r} P^{(0)}=\tilde{M}^{10}\binom{9,771}{94,048}=\binom{26,810}{77,009} .
$$

41. 

$$
\begin{aligned}
& B e^{10 r} P^{(0)}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0.035 & 0.050
\end{array}\right)\binom{9,771}{94,048}=5,044 \\
& B \tilde{M}^{10} e^{10 r} P^{(0)}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0.035 & 0.050
\end{array}\right)\binom{26,810}{77,009}=4,789 .
\end{aligned}
$$

The difference is 255 .
42.
$\hat{m}_{u r}=\frac{\text { Twelve Month Rural Increase-Natural Rural Increase }}{\text { July } 1 \text { Estimate of Urban Population }}$,
$\hat{m}_{\text {ru }}=\frac{\text { Twelve Month Urban Increase-Natural Urban Increase }}{\text { July } 1 \text { Estimate of Rural Population }}$.
$\hat{m}_{u u}=1-\hat{m}_{u r}$ and $\hat{m}_{r r}=1-\hat{m}_{r u}$.
43.
$m_{\mu \mu}^{(10)}=$ the probability of starting as an urban dweller, and after 10 periods being an urban dweller.
$m_{u r}^{(10)}=$ the probability of starting as an urban dweller, and after 10 periods being a rural dweller.
$m_{r u}^{(10)}=$ the probability of starting as a rural dweller, and after 10 periods being an urban dweller.
$m_{r r}^{(10)}=$ the probability of starting as a rural dweller, and after 10 periods being a rural dweller.
44.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \pi_{u}=m_{r u} /\left(m_{u r}+m_{r u}\right), \\
& \pi_{r}=m_{u r} /\left(m_{u r}+m_{r u}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

$\pi_{u}$ and $\pi_{r}$ are the long-term proportions of urban and rural people in a population.
45.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \pi_{u}=0.020 /[0.001+0.020]=0.9524, \\
& \pi_{r}=0.001 /[0.001+0.020]=0.0476 .
\end{aligned}
$$

For $M^{*}, \pi_{u}=0.800$, and $\pi_{r}=0.200$.
46. Lotka's theorem says that:
"A population subjected to fixed rates of mortality and fertility will asymptotically approach an age distribution which depends only on the schedule of mortality and fertility."
The theorems are similar because the long-term distributions (probability or age) are independent of the initial states of nature or age distributions.
47. (a)

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{i j}^{n+m}= & P\left\{X_{n+m}=j \mid X_{0}=i\right\} \\
= & \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} P\left\{X_{n+m}=j, X_{n}=k \mid X_{0}=i\right\} \\
& \text { by the law of total probability, } \\
= & \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} P\left\{X_{n+m}=j \mid X_{n}=k, X_{0}=i\right\} P\left\{X_{n}=k \mid X_{0}=i\right\} \\
& \text { by a conditioning argument, } \\
= & \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} P_{i k}^{n} P_{k j}^{m} \text { by the Markovian property. }
\end{aligned}
$$

(b)

48. Let $T_{1}=$ time at which first event occurs and $T_{2}=$ time at which second event occurs. Our assumptions are that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P\left\{T_{1} \leq t\right\}=1-e^{-\lambda t} \\
& P\left\{T_{2} \leq t\right\}=1-e^{-\mu t}
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $T=$ time when either $T_{1}$ or $T_{2}$ occurs, i.e., $T=\min \left(T_{1}, T_{2}\right)$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
P\{T \leq t\} & =1-P\{T>t\} \\
& =1-P\left\{\min \left(T_{1}, T_{2}>t\right)\right\} \\
& =1-P\left\{T_{1}>t, T_{2}>t\right\} \\
& =1-P\left\{T_{1}>t\right\} P\left\{T_{2}>t\right\} \text { by independence, } \\
& =1-e^{-\lambda t} e^{-\mu t} \\
& =1-e^{-(\lambda+\mu) t} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, $T$ has an exponential distribution with rate $\lambda+\mu$.
49. For this process,

$$
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\lambda_{0} \lambda_{1} \cdots \lambda_{n-1}}{\mu_{1} \mu_{2} \cdots \mu_{n}}=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\theta(\theta+\lambda) \cdots(\theta+(n-1) \lambda)}{\mu^{n} n!} .
$$

By the ratio test for series, this will converge when

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\theta(\theta+\lambda) \cdots(\theta+n \lambda)}{(n+1)!\mu^{n+1}} \cdot \frac{n!\mu^{n}}{\theta(\theta+\lambda) \cdots(\theta+(n-1) \lambda)} \\
& \quad=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\theta+n \lambda}{(n+1) \mu}=\frac{\lambda}{\mu}<1 .
\end{aligned}
$$

This is true when $\lambda<\mu$. When $\lambda \geq \mu$, one can demonstrate that the necessary and sufficient condition for convergence is not fulfilled.
50. Multiply the second differential equation by $n$, and add over $n=1,2, \ldots$. The terms involving $n^{2}$ cancel, and one obtains

$$
M^{\prime}(t)=\lambda \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(n-1) P_{n-1}(t)-\mu \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(n+1) P_{n+1}(t)=(\lambda-\mu) M(t) .
$$

A little algebra is needed to justify the second series starting at $n=0$. The differential equation for $M(t)$, with initial condition

$$
P_{A}(0)=1 \quad(\text { or } M(0)=A)
$$

yields

$$
M(t)=A e^{(\lambda-\mu) t}
$$

This function tends to $0, A$, or $\infty$, according as $\lambda<\mu, \lambda=\mu$, or $\lambda>\mu$.
51. (a) $G=1.1$.
(b) $\sigma^{2}=E\left(N^{2}\right)-(1.1)^{2}=1.89$.
(c)

| Sons with $k$ brothers | Number of cases |
| :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 2 |
| 1 | 2 |
| 2 | 3 |
| 3 | 4 |
| Total | 11 |

(d) $B=1.818$.
53. The losses are:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& L_{1}=\frac{1}{3}(0)+\frac{1}{2}(30)+\frac{1}{6}(72)=27 \\
& L_{2}=\frac{1}{3}(9)+\frac{1}{2}(0)+\frac{1}{6}(30)=8
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
L_{3}=\frac{1}{3}(21)+\frac{1}{2}(16)+\frac{1}{6}(0)=15 .
$$

Therefore, estimate $\hat{x}=275$ has minimum loss.

## Brief List of References

## Works on Demography

Cox, Pcter R. (1976), Demography (5th Ed.), Cambridge University Press: Cambridge. Keyfitz, Nathan (1968), Introduction to the Mathematics of Population, AddisonWesley: Reading, Mass.*
Keyfitz, Nathan and Wilhelm Flieger (1968), World Population: An Analysis of Vital Data, University of Chicago Press: Chicago.
Keyfitz, Nathan (1977), Applied Mathematical Demography, Wiley: New York.
Pollard, A. H., Farhat Yusuf, and G. N. Pollard (1981), Demographic Techniques (2nd Ed.), Pergammon Press: Sydney.
Pressat, Roland (1972), Demographic Analysis, Aldine-Atherton: Chicago (English translation of L'Analyse Demographique, Presses Universitaires de France: Paris, 1969).

Shryock, Henry S. and Jacob S. Siegel (1971), The Methods and Materials of Demography, Vols. 1 and 2, U.S. Government Printing Office: Washington, D.C.
Spiegelman, M. (1968), Introduction to Demography (Revised Ed.), Harvard University Press: Cambridge, Mass.

A small number of problems have brief references of the form (Burks 1933). Complete bibliographic details will be found in the references sections of the above books.

## Actuarial Texts

Batten, R. W. (1978), Mortality Table Construction, Prentice-Hall: Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey.
Bowers, Newton L., Hans U. Gerber, James C. Hickman, Donald A. Jones, and Cecil J. Nesbitt (1983), Actuarial Mathematics, Society of Actuaries: Chicago.

[^2]Greville, T. N. E. (1974), Part 5 Study Notes on Graduation, Society of Actuaries: Chicago.
Jordan, C. W. (1967), Life Contingencies (2nd Ed.), Society of Actuaries: Chicago. Miller, M. D. (1946), Elements of Graduation, Society of Actuaries: Chicago.

## Further References

Beekman, John A. (1974), Two Stochastic Processes, Almqvist and Wiksell: Stockholm, also Halsted Press (Wiley): New York.
Elandt-Johnson, Regina C. and Norman L. Johnson (1980), Survival Models and Data Analysis, Wiley: New York.
Feller, William (1968), An Introduction to Probability Theory and Its Applications, Vol. I (3rd Ed.), Wiley: New York.
Halmos, P. R. (1980), The heart of mathematics, The American Mathematical Monthly, 87, 519-524.
Kellison, Stephen G. (1975), Fundamentals of Numerical Analysis, R. D. Irwin, Inc: Homewood, IL.
Ralston, Anthony (1965), A First Course in Numerical Analysis, McGraw-Hill: New York.
Ross, Sheldon M. (1972), Introduction to Probability Models, Academic Press: New York.
Scarborough, J. B. (1958), Numerical Mathematical Analysis, Johns Hopkins Press: Baltimore.

## Index

Abnormal age distribution ..... 58
Abscissa
Actuarial firm ..... 26
Actuarial premium ..... 60
Addition law for probabilities ..... 44
Addition to rate of increase ..... 56
Additive constant in force ofmortality53
Adjusted death rate ..... 30, 32
Age-sex-adjusted death rates ..... 32
Age-specific death rate ..... 36
Age-specific fertility rate ..... 80
Age-specific rates of fatherhood ..... 108
Ages of positive fertility ..... 56
Aggregate projected births ..... 121
Aging process ..... 10
Annual birth rate ..... 16
Annual compounding ..... 5
Annual probability of dying ..... 33
Approximation to stable population ..... 61
Arithmetic growth ..... 5
Arithmetic-mean-geometric-mean inequality 25
Arithmetic progression ..... 95
Associative law ..... 105
Assumed force of mortality ..... 64
Assumptions regarding moments ..... 55
Asymptote ..... 18
Austrian males ..... 36
Average age at death ..... 52
Average family size ..... 126
Average rate of increase of births ..... 57

## BASIC <br> 65

Balducci assumption ..... 34, 37, 50
Basic life table column ..... 26
Batten, R. W ..... 134
Beckenbach and Bellman ..... 24
Beekman, John A. 120, 135
Binomial theorem ..... 99
Birth rate 17, 55, 6
Birth series ..... 94
Births to women over 30 ..... 79
Block matrix ..... 97
Bounds on $r$ ..... 80
Bowers, Newton L. 31,134
Branching process ..... 116
Brass, William ..... 108
Bulgaria males ..... 33
Burks ..... 118
Bur
Cardiovascular diseases ..... 32
Census ..... 57
Census records 28, 31, 57
Censuses ..... 3
Central death rate ..... 29, 32
Central Limit Theorem ..... 115,116
Chance of extinction ..... 116, 126
Characteristic equation $80,87,88,96$
Chi-squared goodness of fit test ..... 33
Childbearing pattern ..... 81
Children at school ..... 55
Closed stable population ..... 56
Coale, A. J. 57

Cohort 60,61
Cohort born $x$ years ago 64
Combinations of ages.. 65
Complementary probability 28
Complete expectation of life 41
Compound interest 1
Concave downward 35
Condition for convergence 131
Condition for stability 5
Conditional probability 111,129
Conditioning argument 131
Confidence intervals $32,115,116$
Constant differences 93
Constant force assumption 34, 38, 50
Constant rate of increase 8,93
Continuities between past and future 93
Continuous compounding 5
Continuous random variable 111
Convergence 82
Cox, Peter R. 134
Crude death rate $32,56,61,86$
Crude rate of natural increase 2
Cubic extrapolation 95,99
Cumulant-generating function 87, 88
Cumulants 80
Cumulants of life table 60
Cumulants of net maternity function 89
Curtate expectation of life 27
Curve of the $\dot{n}$ th degree 94

De Moivre model 33
Death rate a minimum 61
Deaths uniformly distributed through year 35
Declining function of rate of increase 59
Decrease in deaths 37
Decrease in mean age of childbearing 81
Demographic transition 95
Derivative 53,79
Derivative of an integral 54
Derivative of mean age 59
Destabilization 66
Deterministic survivorship group 31
Differential equation $2,3,6,18,28$
Differentiating twice 62
Differentiation under integral sign 84
Digraphs 4
Diminution of a cohort 26
Discrete random variable 111
Distribution of sizes of completed families 118
Dominant root 4, 20, 21
Doubling time 6,13

Effects of mortality and fertility 84
Elandt-Johnson, Regina 135
Eliminating cause $i 34$
Equidistant time periods 3,94
Error in deaths under 1 year of age 37
Estimate of population 123
Estimated rate of increase 65
Euler, L. 55
Exclusive events 110
Expectation of life 27,33
Expected future births 119
Expected number of direct descendants 116
Expected number of girl children 106
Expected size of family Il6
Expected survivors to age $\boldsymbol{x} 30$
Exponential approximation 59
Exponential distribution 132
Exponential function 17, 30,50
Exponential growth model 5,6
Exponentialiy distributed arrival time 122
Exposure 35
Exposure to risk of childbearing 103
Extended period of geometric increase 60
Extinction 110

Family goal 115
Feller, William 117, 123, 135
Female birth matrix 108
Female dominance 108
Female projection matrix 95
Fibonacci rabbit population 95, 102
Finite difference 94
Fixed vector 30
Flieger, Wilhelm 134
Force of mortality $27,36,37,57,80,81$
Force of mortality age independent 37,81
Force of mortality from cause $i 43$
Force of mortality increases linearly 38
Forecasting 93
Fourth differences zero 99
Fraction alive at given time 8
Fraction of population aged $x$ to $x+d x \quad 61$
Fraction still alive 8, 16.
France 58
Functional itcration $78,82,96,105$
Fundamental theorem of calculus 28
Funded scheme 60

Gaiton's equation 117
Geometric growth 1,2,5
Geometric progression 95, 117
Gerber, Hans U. 31, 134

Gompertz's law 28,39
Goodman, Leo A. 116
Graduation of data 26,31
Graph theory 4
Graphs 4, 11, 19
Greville, T. N. E. 135
Growth rate 3,30

Halmos, P. R. 135
Hawaii 7
Heterogeneous population 81, 97, 107
Hickman, James C. 31, 134
Highest age of reproduction 85
Highest age to which anyone lives 56
Hyperbola 9, 59, 93, 95
Hyperbolic life table 68
Hypothetical data set 31
Hypothetical primitive community 60

Identification problem 68
Implied rate of increase 78
Improvement in mortality 92
Increase over the transition 95
Independent random variables 32,114
Indiana 31,40
Inequalities 36
Infant mortality 37
Infant mortality rates 32
Initial condition 2, 18
Instantaneous death rate 39
Integration by parts 36, 41, 42, 52, 62
Interaction of mortality and fertility 59
Interpolation 38
Intrinsic birth rate 87
Intrinsic death rate 56
Intrinsic rate $r$ 56, 78, 80
Irreducible graph or matrix 5,21
Iterative solution 66

Johnson, Norman L. 135
Jones, Donald A. 31, 134
Jordan, C. W. 135

Kellison, Stephen G. 127, 135
Keyfitz, Nathan 24, 134
Keyfitz and Flieger 58, 78, 134

Length of generation $80,88,96$
Life insurance company 26
Life table 26, 38
Life table death rate 36
Linear fitting 99
Logistic curve 3, 6, 9, 93, 94, 95
Logistic extrapolation 12
Logistic population model 6
Logits 97
Lotka, Alfred J. 61, 117, 123
Lotka's ergodic theorem 121, 131
Lower bound for variance 62
Lowest age of reproduction 85

MBASIC language 82
Makeham graduation 28,39,54
Malignant neoplasms 32
Markov chain 120, 121
Martinique 58
Matrix of transition probabilities $\quad 120$
Maximum absolute number of deaths 38
Mean absolute error 99
Mean age at death in stationary population 33
Mean age of childbearing $85,88,96$
Mean age of death 51
Mean age of population 51,59
Mean age of the stable population 64
Mean force of mortality 36
Mean value theorem for integrals 48
Mean years lived after age $x \quad 36$
Medical procedure that lowers mortality 81
Medical research team 26
Mexico 57
Michigan 6
Migration 11, 109
Miller, M. D. 135
Mixed dominance 97
Model mortality table 37
Modified functions 47
Modified life table 36
Moment-generating function 80,114
Moments of distribution of ages 55
Mortality curve rising with age 36
Mortality fixed 37
Multi-decrement tables 31
Muncie 31, 40

National census department 26
Native-born 9, 16
Nesbitt, Cecil J. 3!, 134
Net maternity function $56,78,80,85,87$

Net reproduction rate 106
Newton's advancing difference formula 33
Newton-Raphson 96, 105, 127
Nilpotent property 95
No change estimate 100
Nodes 4
Number of deaths maximal at age 0 5!
Number of engineers 11
Number of persons at age $x \quad 61$
Number that ever lived 8,16
Numerical derivatives 81
Numerical error 38,50

Observed age-specific death rate 29
Obscrved rates 29
Official population estimate 5
Old-age pensions 59
One-sex projection 95

Parabola 20,37
Parity progression ratio 119
Partial derivatives 89
Participation rates 55
Pay-as-you-go 60
Permuting mortality and fertility schedules 55,83
Person years lived 60
Person years lived by cohort 60
Person at age $x$ to nearest birthday 62
Persons lived 60
Pharmaceutical house 26
Point of inflection 6,14
Pollard, A. H. 134
Pollard, G. N. 134
Population asymptotic to a ceiling 12
Population ceiling 3
Population closed to migration 6,30
Population count 1
Population explosion 17
Population of Mexico 59
Population subgroups 9
Population projection 103
Pressat, Roland 134
Primitive graph 5,19
Primitive irreducible matrices 10
Probabilities of dying 26
Probability density functions 111,114
Probability generating function 114
Probability of dying 27, 29
Probability of survival 81
Projected sex ratio 116
Projection 25,93
Projection matrix ..... 10
Projection matrix for Norway females ..... 96
Projection matrix in block form 108
Projection with a cubic curve ..... 97
Quadratic equation ..... 66
Quadratic extrapolation ..... 95
Quadratic fitting 94, 99
Quasi-stability ..... 57
Radix of life table ..... 27
Ralston, Anthony ..... 135
Random interval ..... 115
Random number of children ..... 115
Random sample ..... 119
Random variable 111,127
Rate compounded continuously 2
Rate of increase of population $1,55,57$
Rates fixed over time 4
Ratio of girls under 5 to women 15 to 44 ..... 58
Real root ..... 79, 85
Recursion relation ..... 35
Reed and Merrell ..... 37
Regime of mortality and fertility ..... 96
Retirement colony ..... 59
Ross, Sheldon M. 121, 122, 135
Rural and urban ..... 109
Rural increase ..... 130
Rural population ..... 10,131
Rural-urban shifts ..... 120
Ryder, Norman B. ..... 120
Sample space ..... 110
Scarborough, J. B ..... 135
Sensitivity to the several moments ..... 55
Separate projections ..... 25
Set of homogeneous equations ..... 105
Sex ratio ..... 61
Shape of $l(x+t)$ ..... 37
Short-term forecasts ..... 99
Shryock, Henry S. ..... 134
Sick or well people ..... 10
Siegel, Jacob S ..... 134
Slope of curve of stable age distribution ..... 56
Social security 60
Society of Actuaries 38,39, 40
Spiegelman, Mortimer ..... 134
Stability ..... 78
Stability property ..... 10
Stable age distribution $55,80,105$
Stable age distribution concave ..... 56
Stable population increasing at 1 percent per year 60
Stable theory ..... 55
Stable vector ..... 20,96
Stable working population ..... 60
Standard Metropolitan Statistical Area
Standard deviation ..... 118, 128
Standard life table ..... 30
Standard population ..... 32
Starting population ..... 9
State vital statistics unit ..... 26
Stationary population ..... 26,118
Statistical Abstract ..... 94
Statistical hypotheses ..... 35
Steffensen, J. F. 117
Stochastic models ..... 110
Straight line fitting ..... 94
Subpopulations ..... 3,91
Successive differencing ..... 98
Successive iterates ..... 89
Surviving immigrants 9,16
Survivorship function $I(x)$ ..... 57
Taylor's theorem ..... 86, 105
Third moment about the mean ..... 8,15
Thompson's index ..... 58, 66
Total differential ..... 89
Total progeny ..... 118
Tracking out the curve ..... 101
Trajectory ..... 78
Transition from state $\boldsymbol{j}$ to state $i$ ..... 4
Transition matrix ..... 10
Transposition ..... 66
True force of mortality ..... 64
True survivorship ..... 64
Typographical errors ..... 39, 53
U.S. Bureau of the Census 7,94
Ultimate population ..... 2, 18, 94
Ultimate ratio of increase 4,10,21
Ultimate stable ratio ..... 96
Ultimate upper limit on size ..... 9
Uniform distribution ..... 33

Uniform distribution of deaths 29,34
Uniformly increasing populations 31
Uniqueness of the real root 86
Unit of time 1
United States males 39
Unknown births 81
Unknown trajectory 82
Unstable population 65
Upper bound 49
Upper bound on expectation of life 37
Urban dweller 131
Urban population 10,130

Variability of estimate 65
Variable increase $r(t) \quad 3$
Variable of integration 84
Variance of ages 59
Variance of ages 60 and over 59
Variance of an increasing stable population 60
Variance of distribution 59, 94
Variance of estimated $r 57$
Variance of stationary age distribution 64
Variance of the projection 94
Variation of $r 58$
Vector of age-specific fertility rates 103
Vectors 4
Verhulst, P. F. 3
Vertices 4

Weibull distribution 39
Wilson and Hilferty 119
Women bearing children 55
Working population 60

Years lived between ages $x$ and $x+n$
Youngest age of childbearing 82
Yusuf, Farhat 134

Zimbabwe 8


[^0]:    10 'fUNCTIONAL ITERATION FOR THE INTRINSIC RATE
    20 'first read in the life table. then the
    30 'fEMALE AGE-SPECIFIC FERTILITY RATES
    40 FOR $I=1$ TO 6
    50 READ LL(I)
    $60 \mathrm{LL}(\mathrm{I})=\mathrm{LL}(\mathrm{I}) / 1000$

[^1]:    10 'file matemult
    20 : POPULATION PROJECTION ANO
    30 ' MULTIPLICATION OF MATRICES
    40 'TO USE ENTER THE SIZE OF THE SQUARE matrix aS $N$
    SO 'enter the number of cycles as e
    60 'ENTER THE MATRIX AS DATA
    70 'ENTER THE VECTOR IF THERE IS ONE AS OATA
    $80 \mathrm{~N}=3: E=5$ 'SIZE OF MATRIX AND NUMBER OF CYCLES OF PROJECTION
    90 GOSUB 130 'FOR POPULATION PROJECTION
    100 STOP
    110 GOSU8 430 'FRR SUCCESSIVE POWERS OF MATRIX
    120 STOP
    $130 \operatorname{DIM} M(N, N), M M(N, N)$
    140 DIM PROD $(N, N)$
    $150 \mathrm{D}=1$
    160 FOR $I=1$ TO $N$

[^2]:    * A revised printing of this reference was made in 1977. Those revisions included a new Chapter 20, "Problems in the Mathematics of Population," pages 425-444. Many of those problems have been included in this book, with the permission of Addison-Wesley Publishing Co. It should be noted that those pages contained few solutions, whereas this book has at least as many pages devoted to solutions as to problems.

